2017 **FLEX** Owner's Manual

owner.ford.com

ford.ca

September 2016
First Printing
Owner's Manual
Flex
Litho in U.S.A.

HA8J 19A321 AA

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2016

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 20160903133647

Table of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual.....7
Symbols Glossary.....7
Data Recording.....9
California Proposition 65.....11
Perchlorate.....11
Ford Credit.....11
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....12
Special Notices.....12
Mobile Communications Equipment.....13
Export Unique Options.....13

Environment
Protecting the Environment.....15

At a Glance
Instrument Panel Overview.....16

Child Safety
General Information.....18
Installing Child Restraints.....19
Booster Seats.....28
Child Restraint Positioning.....30
Child Safety Locks.....32

Seatbelts
Principle of Operation.....34
Fastening the Seatbelts.....35
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....38
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....39
Seatbelt Reminder.....39
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....41
Seatbelt Extension.....41

Personal Safety System™
Personal Safety System™.....43

Supplementary Restraints System
Principle of Operation.....44
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....45
Front Passenger Sensing System.....46
Side Airbags.....48
Safety Canopy™.....49
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....50
Airbag Disposal.....51

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....52
Remote Control.....53
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....56

MyKey™
Principle of Operation.....57
Creating a MyKey.....58
Clearing All MyKeys.....59
Checking MyKey System Status.....60
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....61
MyKey Troubleshooting.....61

Doors and Locks
Locking and Unlocking.....63
Manual Liftgate.....66
Power Liftgate.....67
Keyless Entry.....70

Security
Passive Anti-Theft System.....73
Anti-Theft Alarm.....74

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column.....75

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column.....75
Audio Control.....76
Voice Control.....77
Cruise Control.....77
Information Display Control.....77
Heated Steering Wheel.....77

Pedals

Adjusting the Pedals.....78

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....79
Autowipers.....79
Windshield Washers.....80
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....80

Lighting

General Information.....82
Lighting Control.....82
Autolamps.....83
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....84
Headlamp Exit Delay.....84
Daytime Running Lamps.....85
Front Fog Lamps.....85
Adaptive Headlamps.....85
Direction Indicators.....86
Interior Lamps.....86
Ambient Lighting.....87

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....88
Exterior Mirrors.....89
Interior Mirror.....91
Sun Visors.....91
Moonroof.....91

Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....93
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....94
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....97

Information Displays

General Information.....99
Information Messages.....107

Climate Control

Manual Climate Control.....116
Automatic Climate Control.....117
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....119
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....120
Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....123
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....123
Cabin Air Filter.....124
Remote Start.....124

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....125
Head Restraints.....125
Manual Seats.....128
Power Seats.....129
Memory Function.....130
Rear Seats.....131
Heated Seats.....138
Climate Controlled Seats.....139

Universal Garage Door Opener

Universal Garage Door Opener.....140

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....145

Storage Compartments

Center Console.....147
Overhead Console.....148

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Table of Contents

Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information.....149
Ignition Switch.....149
Keyless Starting.....149
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....150
Engine Block Heater.....153

Fuel and Refueling
Safety Precautions.....155
Fuel Quality.....156
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....156
Running Out of Fuel.....156
Refueling.....157
Fuel Consumption.....160
Emission Control System.....161

Transmission
Automatic Transmission.....164

All-Wheel Drive
Using All-Wheel Drive.....168

Brakes
General Information.....175
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....175
Parking Brake.....176

Traction Control
Principle of Operation.....177
Using Traction Control.....177

Stability Control
Principle of Operation.....178
Using Stability Control.....179

Parking Aids
Principle of Operation.....180
Rear Parking Aid.....180
Active Park Assist.....181
Rear View Camera.....185

Cruise Control
Principle of Operation.....188
Using Cruise Control.....188
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....189

Driving Aids
Blind Spot Information System.....195
Cross Traffic Alert.....197
Steering.....200
Collision Warning System.....200

Load Carrying
Cargo Nets.....203
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....203
Load Limit.....203

Towing
Towing a Trailer.....209
Trailer Sway Control.....210
Recommended Towing Weights.....210
Essential Towing Checks.....212
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....215

Driving Hints
Breaking-In.....217
Economical Driving.....217
Driving Through Water.....218
Floor Mats.....218

Roadside Emergencies
Roadside Assistance.....220
Hazard Warning Flashers.....221
Fuel Shutoff.....221
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....222
Post-Crash Alert System.....224

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Transporting the Vehicle.....224

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need.....226
In California (U.S. Only).....227
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....228
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only).....229
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....229
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....230
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....231
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....231

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....233
Changing a Fuse.....242

Maintenance

General Information.....244
Opening and Closing the Hood.....244
Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Duratec.....246
Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....247
Engine Oil Dipstick.....248
Engine Oil Check.....248
Oil Change Indicator Reset.....249
Engine Coolant Check.....250
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....254
Brake Fluid Check.....255
Power Steering Fluid Check.....256
Washer Fluid Check.....256
Changing the 12V Battery.....256
Checking the Wiper Blades.....258
Changing the Wiper Blades.....258
Adjusting the Headlamps.....259
Removing a Headlamp.....260
Changing a Bulb.....260
Bulb Specification Chart.....263
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....265

Vehicle Care

General Information.....266
Cleaning Products.....266
Cleaning the Exterior.....266
Waxing.....267
Cleaning the Engine.....268
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....268
Cleaning the Interior.....269
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....269
Cleaning Leather Seats.....270
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....270
Cleaning the Wheels.....270
Vehicle Storage.....271

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....273
Tire Care.....275
Using Snow Chains.....289
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....290
Changing a Road Wheel.....293
Technical Specifications.....298

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 3.5L Duratec.....299
Engine Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....299
Motorcraft Parts - 3.5L Duratec.....300
Motorcraft Parts - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....301
Vehicle Identification Number.....302
Vehicle Certification Label.....303

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Transmission Code Designation.....303
Capacities and Specifications - 3.5L Duratec.....304
Capacities and Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....308

Audio System

General Information.....313
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Satellite Radio.....314
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD.....318
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD.....319
USB Port.....320
Media Hub.....320

SYNC™

General Information.....321
Using Voice Recognition.....323
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....326
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....339
SYNC™ AppLink™.....341
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....342
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....352

SYNC™ 3

General Information.....360
Home Screen.....373
Using Voice Recognition.....374
Entertainment.....381
Climate.....391
Phone.....393
Navigation.....399
Apps.....407
Settings.....410
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....422

Accessories

Accessories.....435

Ford Protect

Ford Protect.....437

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information.....439
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....442
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....445
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....447

Appendices

End User License Agreement.....457

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

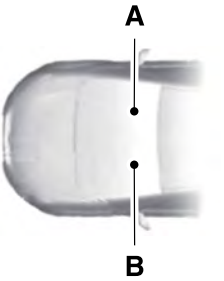
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Air conditioning system

Air conditioning system lubricant type

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

Battery

Battery acid

Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Brake system

Cabin air filter

Check fuel cap

Child safety door lock or unlock

Child seat lower anchor

Child seat tether anchor

Cruise control

Do not open when hot

Engine air filter

Engine coolant

Engine coolant temperature

Engine oil

Explosive gas

Fan warning

Fasten seatbelt

Flammable

Front airbag

Front fog lamps

Fuel pump reset

Fuse compartment

Hazard warning flashers

Heated rear window

Heated windshield

Interior luggage compartment release

Jack

Keep out of reach of children

Lighting control

Low tire pressure warning

Maintain correct fluid level

Note operating instructions

Panic alarm

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Parking aid

Parking brake

Power steering fluid

Power windows front/rear

Power window lockout

Requires registered technician

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

See Service Manual

Service engine soon

Side airbag

Shield the eyes

Stability control

Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, (for example, your contact information), to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, such as SYNC Vehicle Health Report or MyFord Mobile App, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide

services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at www.ford.ca, including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries. See **SYNC™** (page 321).

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: ***Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.***

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Note: ***Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature.*** *See* ***SYNC™*** *(page 321).*

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See **SYNC™** (page 321).

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNINGS

Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling.

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazard-ouswaste/perchlorate

FORD CREDIT

US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

We offer a number of convenient ways for you to contact us, and to manage your account.

Call 1-800-727-7000.

For more information about Ford Credit and access to the Account Manager, go to www.fordcredit.com.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS

You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

Never place front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats in front of an active passenger airbag.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector

WARNING

Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features,

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

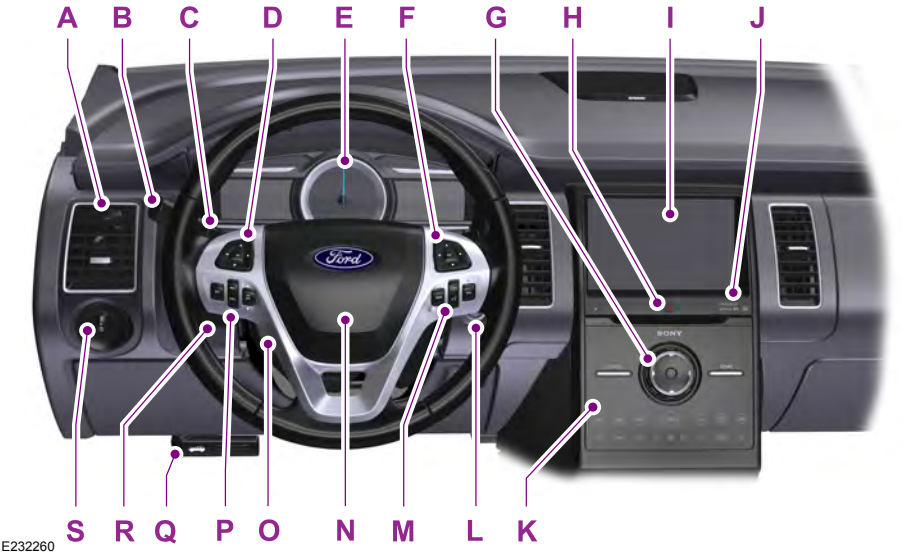
Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW



A Air vent.

B Wiper lever. See **Windshield Wipers** (page 79).

C Direction Indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 86).

D Information display control. See **Information Display Control** (page 77).

E Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 93).

F Information display control. See **Information Display Control** (page 77).

G Audio system. See **Audio System** (page 313).

H Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 221).

I Information and entertainment display. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

J Passenger airbag indicator light. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 46).

K Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 116).

L Keyless start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 149).

M Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 76).

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

N Horn.

O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 75).

P Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 188).

Q Hood release. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 244).

R Instrument panel dimmer control. See **Instrument Lighting Dimmer** (page 84).

S Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 82).

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety

WARNINGS

Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to www.tc.gc.ca to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 46).

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

Child Seats

E142594

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- For second-row seating positions, adjust the recliner slightly to improve child seat fit. If needed, remove the head restraints.
- For third-row seating positions, stow the head restraints to improve child seat fit. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*

Note: *The lock-off device on some child restraints may not accommodate the shoulder portion of the inflatable seatbelt. Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint regarding the necessary and proper use of the lock-off device. In some instances these devices have been provided only for use in vehicles with seatbelt systems that would otherwise require a locking clip.*

Standard seatbelts

E142528

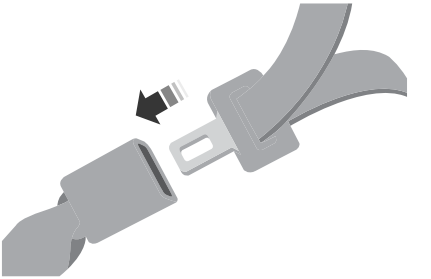
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

E142529

2. After positioning the child safety seat in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.

E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.

E142533

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).

E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

Inflatable seatbelts

E142528

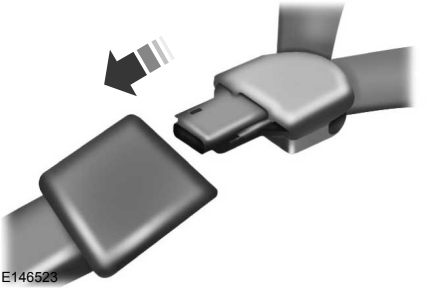
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

E146522

2. After positioning the child safety seat in the proper seating position, grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.

E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.


E146523

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

E146524

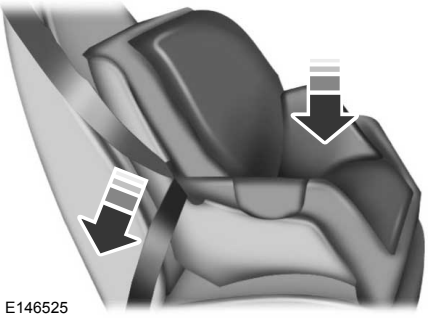
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the lap portion of the inflatable seatbelt and pull upward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

Note: *Unlike the standard seatbelt, the inflatable seatbelt's unique lap portion locks the child seat for installation. The ability for the shoulder portion of the belt to move freely is normal, even after the lap belt has been put into the automatic locking mode.*

Note: *The lock-off device on some child restraints may not accommodate the shoulder portion of the inflatable seatbelt. Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint regarding the necessary and proper use of the lock-off device. In some instances, these devices have been provided only for use in vehicles with seatbelt systems that would otherwise require a locking clip.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.


E146525

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling down on the lap belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).

E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH)

WARNINGS

Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

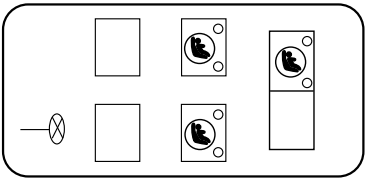
Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where the seatback and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child seat, however the seatbelt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.

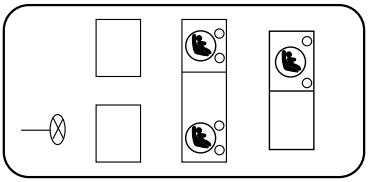
Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.

Second-row bucket seats and third-row passenger side

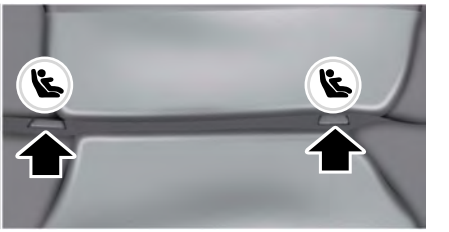


E190825

Second-row bench seats and third-row passenger side



E190826



E144054

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback below the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.

Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. See Using Tether Straps later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING

The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row bench seat are spaced 20.5 inches (52 centimeters) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer’s instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Combining Seatbelt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

Using Tether Straps

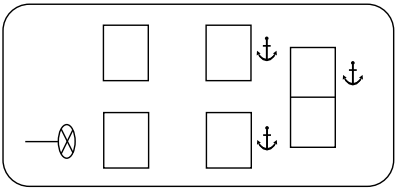
Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once the child safety seat has been installed using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

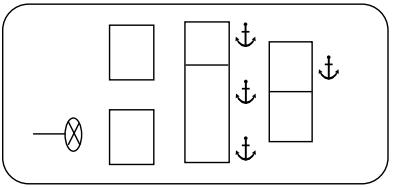
The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

Second row bucket seats and third row passenger side



E190827

Second row bench seats and third row passenger side



E190828

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

E190829

Placement of the tether strap

- Second row outboard seat positions: Route the child safety seat tether strap over the seatback, under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. If needed, remove the head restraint to improve the fit of the child safety seat or tether strap.
- Second row center seat positions: Route the child safety seat tether strap over the top of the head restraint. If needed, remove the head restraint to improve the fit of the child safety seat or tether strap. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).
- Third row seat position: Route the child safety seat tether strap over the seat back, under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. If needed, fold the head restraint down to improve the fit of the child safety seat or tether strap. See **Head Restraints** (page 125).

1. Route the tether strap.
2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.
3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown. The tether hook may be twisted ½ turn to improve installation. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a crash.

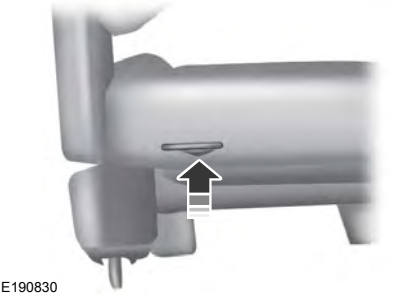
E190833

4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Second row bucket (40/40)

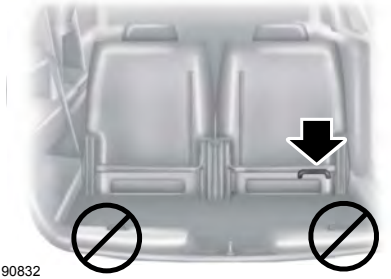


E190830

Second row bench (60/40)

E190831

Third row seat



E190832

Note: *The cargo tie downs at the rear edge of the floor are not tether anchors.*

BOOSTER SEATS

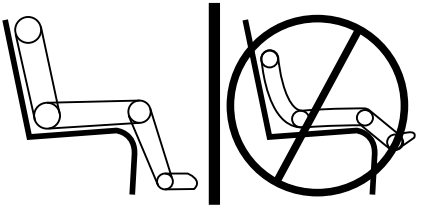
WARNING

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Note: *Some booster seat safety belt guides may not accommodate the shoulder portion of the inflatable safety belt.*

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats

E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

E70710

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

E142596

E142597

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all

WARNINGS

the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNINGS

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Seats*** *(page 125).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.

E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

WARNINGS

When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder safety belts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The safety belt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder safety belts.
- Shoulder safety belt with automatic locking mode, (except driver safety belt and rear inflatable safety belt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- Safety belt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.

- Safety belt warning light and chime.

- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The safety belt pretensioners and rear inflatable safety belts are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers. The safety belt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body when activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal crashes, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

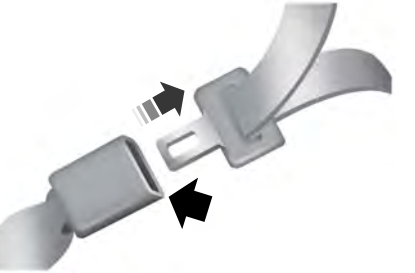
FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Standard belts shown, inflatable belts similar

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.

E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a click and feel it latch. Make sure you securely fasten the tongue in the buckle.



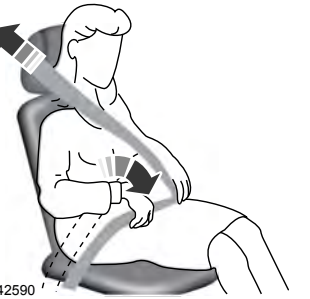
E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

WARNING

Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



E142590

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Seatbelt Locking Modes

WARNINGS

After a crash, have a qualified technician check all the seatbelts to make sure the seatbelts including the automatic locking retractor feature for child restraints operate properly. We recommend replacing any system that has damage or does not operate properly. Failure to do so can result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or another crash.

You must replace the seatbelt if the automatic locking retractor or any other seatbelt function is not operating correctly. Failure to replace the seatbelt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a crash.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver seatbelt has the vehicle sensitive locking mode. The front outboard passenger and rear seat belts have both the vehicle sensitive locking mode and the automatic locking mode.

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if you pull the webbing out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull the webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt automatically pre-locks. The belt still retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

Use this mode any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 18).

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

Non-inflatable seatbelts

E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.

2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

Rear outboard inflatable seatbelts (second row only—if equipped)

E146363

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the lap portion of the belt and pull upward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Rear Inflatable Seatbelt (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify rear inflatable seatbelts.

Note: *The rear inflatable seatbelts are compatible with most infant and child safety car seats and belt positioning booster seats when properly installed. This is because they are designed to fill with a cooled gas at a lower pressure and at a slower rate than traditional airbags. After inflation, the shoulder portion of the seatbelt remains cool to the touch.*

The rear inflatable seatbelts are in the shoulder portion of the seatbelts of the second-row outboard seating positions.

The rear inflatable seatbelt consists of the following:

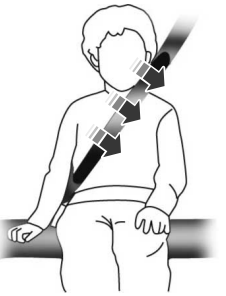
- An inflatable bag in the shoulder seatbelt webbing.
- Lap seatbelt webbing with automatic locking mode.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 50).

How does the rear inflatable seatbelt system work?

WARNING

If the rear inflatable seatbelt has deployed, it will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the seatbelt is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The rear inflatable seatbelts function like standard restraints in everyday usage.



E146364

During a crash of sufficient force, the inflatable belt inflates from inside the webbing.

E146365

The fully inflated belt's increased diameter more effectively holds the occupant in the appropriate seating position, and spreads crash forces over more area of the body than regular seatbelts. This helps reduce pressure on the chest and helps control head and neck motion for passengers.

The rear inflatable seatbelts are designed to inflate in frontal or near-frontal crashes, some side impact crashes and rollovers. The fact that the rear inflatable seatbelt did not inflate in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation.

Stowing the Rear Inflatable Seatbelt

The rear inflatable seatbelt has a snap retainer for stowing the seatbelt against the quarter trim panel when it is not in use. This prevents the seatbelt tongue from rattling against the side of the seat and keeps it out of the way when folding or tumbling the second row seats.

E209845

Press the retainer on the seatbelt onto the mating snap to stow. To use the seatbelt, pull it away from the quarter trim panel.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

E209844

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Press the side release buttons and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the buttons and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME

This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

SEATBELT REMINDER

Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the safety belt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid the system turning on the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place on the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

If...	Then...
You and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your safety belts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.
The safety belt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1–2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING

While the system allows you to switch this feature off, the intent of the system is to remind you to wear your safety belt to improve your chance to survive an accident. We recommend you leave the system switched on for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Note: *If you are using MyKey, you cannot disable the Belt-Minder. Also, if you have previously disabled the Belt-Minder, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey. See* ***MyKey™*** *(page 57). .*

Read Steps 1–4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission is in park (P).
- The ignition is off.
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about 1 minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 20 seconds.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light turns on.
4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light flashes for confirmation.

- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
- This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 266).

SEATBELT EXTENSION

WARNINGS

Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

Only use extensions provided free of charge by Ford Motor Company dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle’s seatbelt restraint system.

Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

Do not use a seatbelt extension with an inflatable seatbelt.

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the belt across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from Ford Motor Company dealers. Only Ford seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelts manufacturer should be used with Ford seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your Ford vehicle restraint system.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only) and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

How Does the Personal Safety System Work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the safety belt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 50).

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Sitting improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system which could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

E224572

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that will illuminate indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either ON (enabled) or OFF (disabled).

The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON indicator lamps will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm it is functional.*

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the OFF lamp and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator will illuminate the ON lamp and remain illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag OFF indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person’s legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

Note: *When the passenger airbag status indicator OFF light is illuminated, the passenger (seat mounted) side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.*

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their

feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 50).

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Getting the Services You Need** (page 226).

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNINGS

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.

- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 50).

Note: *The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty passenger seat.*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

SAFETY CANOPY™

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, C or D pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

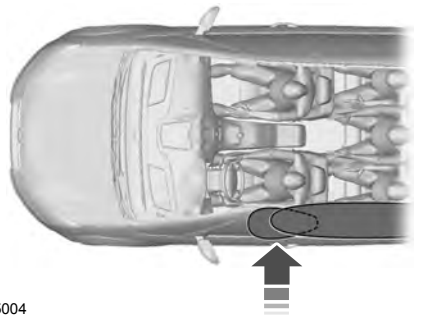
All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B, C and D pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 50).

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags, the Safety Canopy and rear inflatable safety belts. Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The safety belt pretensioners and rear inflatable safety belts are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal, side and rollover crashes.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term* ***IC*** *before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

Other short-distance radio transmitters, such as amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems may operate on the same frequency as your remote control. If other transmitters are operating on those frequencies, you may not be able to use your remote control. Using your remote control near some types of electronic equipment, such as USB devices, computers or cell phones can interfere with remote operation. Operating your remote control near metal or metallic-finished purses, bags or clothing can interfere with remote operation. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Intelligent Access

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met:

- You touch the inside of any exterior door handle within 3 ft (1 m) proximity of an intelligent access key.
- You press the luggage compartment button.
- You press a button on the transmitter.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area or if the transmitter battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See **Remote Control** (page 53).

REMOTE CONTROL

Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (If Equipped)

E210695

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. You can also use the key blade to lock and unlock the glove compartment. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.

E163047

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)

Note: *A three-button remote control operates similarly.*

E138616

The intelligent access keys operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

E142431

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle. You can also use the key blade to lock and unlock the glove compartment. Slide the release on the back of the remote control to release the key blade, then pull the blade out.

E138618

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.*

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

E235202

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Carefully remove the rubber gasket from the transmitter if it does not come off with the battery cover.
3. Remove the old battery.

E235203

4. Insert a new battery with the + facing upward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter.

Intelligent Access Key

1. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

E142432

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover. Do not use the key blade to remove the cover or you could damage it.

E138622

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.

5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.

Car Finder

Press the button twice within three seconds.

The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Note: *If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators will not flash.*

Sounding the Panic Alarm

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

Remote Start (If Equipped)

WARNING

To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or in areas that are not well ventilated.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from the outside. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when the vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 119).

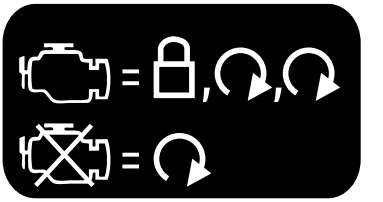
Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system does not work if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is on.
- The anti-theft alarm triggers.
- You switch off the feature.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The service engine soon indicator was on the last time your vehicle was driven.

Remote Starting Your Vehicle

Note: *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. If you do not follow this sequence, your vehicle does not start remotely, the direction indicators do not flash twice and the horn does not sound.*



E138626

The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To start your vehicle remotely:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.

2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start runs the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 99).

Note: *If you remote start your vehicle with an integrated keyhead transmitter, you must switch the ignition on before driving your vehicle. If you remote start your vehicle with an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the push button ignition switch on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.*

The power windows do not work during remote start and the radio does not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps remain on and the vehicle runs for 5, 10 or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

Extending the Engine Running Time

To extend the engine running time duration of your vehicle during remote start, repeat steps 1 and 2 while the engine is running. If the duration is set to 10 minutes, the duration extends by another 10 minutes. For example, if your vehicle had been running from the first remote start for 5 minutes, your vehicle continues to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can extend the remote start up to a maximum of 35 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after the engine stops running.

Turning Your Vehicle Off After Remote Starting

Press the button once. The parking lamps turn off.

You may have to be closer to your vehicle to remotely switch off your vehicle after remote starting. This is due to the added noise of your running vehicle.

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 99).

Memory Feature (If Equipped)

You can use the remote control to recall memory settings for the driver seat, power mirrors, power steering column and power adjustable foot pedals. Press the unlock button on the remote control or unlock your vehicle with the intelligent access key to recall the memory positions. You can program the remote control or intelligent access key to recall memory positions. See **Memory Function** (page 130).

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 73).

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles equipped with a push-button start switch: When both a MyKey and an admin key are present when you start your vehicle, the system recognizes the admin key only.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Belt-Minder or safety belt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low fuel warning is activated earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS), cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions (available only in some markets).

Note: *When you switch lane departure warning off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key:

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

- Various vehicle speed reminders so you know when your vehicle approaches the limits. Warnings appear in the information display and an audible warning sounds when you exceed the limit.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off Advance Trac or traction control, 911 Assist or Emergency Assistance, or Do Not Disturb (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the key fob into the backup slot. The location of your backup slot is in another chapter. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 150).

2. Switch the ignition on.

3. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

To find information on programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. • The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key). • Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 150). • SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 58).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 58).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 73).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. • An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. • The key system has been reset.
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. • No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 58).

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.

E224861

A Unlock.

B Lock.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time.

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)

Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the liftgate are closed.

Note: *If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators will not flash.*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Unlocking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only turn off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.*

Opening a Rear Door From the Inside

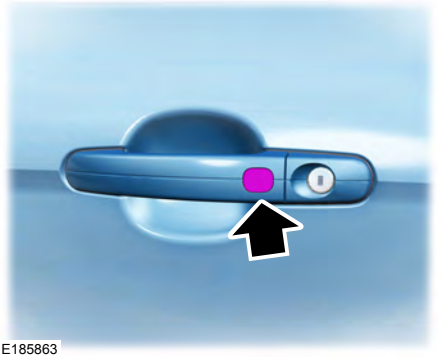
Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

Activating Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The intelligent access key must be within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle.

At a Door

Pull a front exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.



E185863

The locking sensors are on the front door handles.

Touch the locking area on the front of the door handle to lock your vehicle. There is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle again.

Note: *Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.*

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.*

At the Liftgate

Press the exterior liftgate release button on the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle. See **Manual Liftgate** (page 66).

Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (If Equipped)

This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle if the key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock and the horn will sound twice if the key is still in the ignition.

You can still lock your vehicle with the key in the ignition by either:

- Using the keyless entry keypad with the driver door closed.
- Pressing the lock button on the remote control even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, you can lock your vehicle by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

This helps to prevent you from locking your key inside the passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open, transmission in park (P) and the ignition off, the system will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the last door. If the system finds a key, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn sounds twice, indicating that a key is inside.

You can override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the intelligent access key inside your vehicle.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

To override smart unlock, lock your vehicle after you have closed all doors by:

- Using the keyless entry keypad.
- Pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key.
- Touching the locking area on the front of the door handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if:

- The ignition is on.
- The ignition is off and the transmission is not in park (P).

Autolock

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle attains a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *If you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off with the driver door closed, the doors will not autounlock.*

Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

You can switch autounlock and autolock on or off independently of each other.

To enable or disable autolock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door unlock control and within five seconds, press the power door lock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.
7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

To enable or disable autounlock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door lock control and within five seconds, press the power door unlock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.

7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control.

The lamps turn off if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- 25 seconds have elapsed.

The lamps do not turn off if:

- You switch them on with the lighting control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You lock your vehicle from the outside.

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, interior lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver shuts them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

If you leave the ignition switched on and the engine is not running, the battery saver will turn the ignition off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after 45 minutes have elapsed.

MANUAL LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

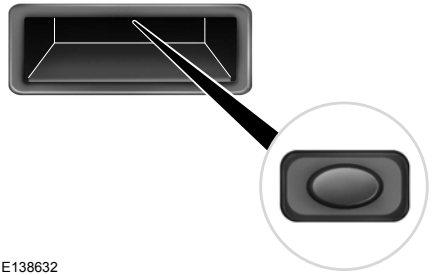
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

With the Remote Control

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate

E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

For automatic transmissions, the liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

For manual transmissions, the liftgate only operates if the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h)

If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone will sound for one of the following reasons:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The liftgate is not fully closed and your vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. Remove any excessive weight from the liftgate. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: *Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

From the Instrument Panel

Press the button on the instrument panel.

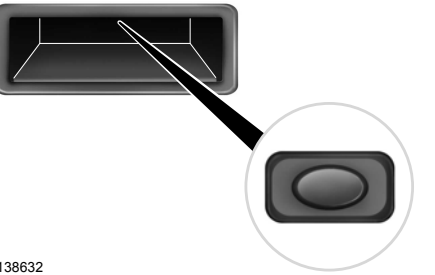
With the Remote Control

Press the button twice within three seconds.

With the Outside Control Button

Opening the Liftgate

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If an intelligent access key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



E138632

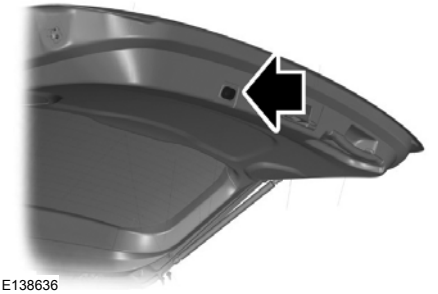
2. Press the control button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a strut failure.*

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.



E138636

Press and release the liftgate control button.

Stopping the Liftgate Movement

Note: *Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.*

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.*

*This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: *Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.*

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until you hear a tone, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than fully open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

Obstacle Detection

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

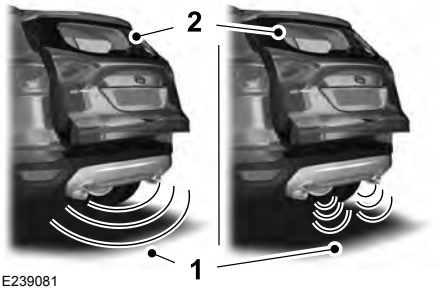
Note: *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.



E239081

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper detection area in a single-kick motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion. Kick between the exhaust and hitch if your vehicle is equipped with a hitch.
2. The liftgate will power open or close.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a strut failure.*

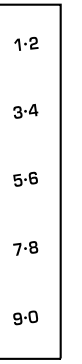
Note: *Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access key away from the rear bumper detection area when washing your vehicle.*

KEYLESS ENTRY

SECURICODE™ Keyless Entry Keypad

The keypad is near the driver window. It illuminates when touched.

Note: *If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Enter your entry code again more slowly.*



E138637

You can use the keypad to do the following:

- Lock or unlock the doors.
- Program and erase user codes.
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.
- Recall memory seat and mirror positions.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set five-digit entry code. The code is on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also program up to five of your own five-digit personal entry codes.

Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.
4. Press **1•2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat steps 1 through 3, then for step 4:

- Press **3•4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5•6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7•8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9•0** to save personal code 5.

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code works even if you have set your own personal code.

Recalling Memory Positions (If Equipped)

The programmed entry codes recall driver memory positions as follows:

- Entry code 1 recalls driver 1 memory positions.
- Entry code 2 recalls driver 2 memory positions.

Note: *Personal entry codes 3, 4 and 5 will not recall memory positions.*

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press and release **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1•2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the factory-set five-digit code works.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after any of the following occur:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch your vehicle on.
- You unlock the vehicle using intelligent access.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking All Doors

Press and hold **7•8** and **9•0** on the keypad simultaneously with the driver door closed. You do not need to enter a code first.

Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press **3•4** on the keypad within five seconds.

Unlocking Only the Driver Door

Enter the factory-set or your personal five-digit code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps illuminate.

Note: *All doors unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is turned off. See* ***Locking and Unlocking*** *(page 63).*

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine if a problem occurs.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

SecuriLock®

The system is an engine immobilization system. It is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a coded key programmed to your vehicle is used. Using the wrong key may prevent the engine from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, a malfunction has happened and a message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

The vehicle arms immediately after you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms the vehicle.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes equipped with two integrated keyhead transmitters or two intelligent access keys.*

The integrated keyhead transmitter functions as a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, as well as a remote control.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters or standard SecuriLock coded keys (integrated keyhead transmitters only) are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.*

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. See your authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed coded keys are not available.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the engine and operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an integrated keyhead transmitter).

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

See your authorized dealer to have additional keys programmed to your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in your vehicle. Electronically lock your vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver door to unlock your vehicle, then switch your vehicle on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 125).*

E191039

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

E191047

3. Lock the steering column.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: POWER ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 125).*

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

E161834

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: Press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: Press the front or rear of the control.

End of Travel Position

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Confirm there is nothing obstructing the motion of the steering column.
2. Press and hold the steering column control until the steering column stops moving.
3. Press the steering column control again. The steering column may begin to move again.
4. When the steering column stops, continue holding the control for an additional few seconds.
5. Repeat for each direction as necessary.

A new stopping position is set. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it will stop just short of the end of the column position.

Memory Feature

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 130).

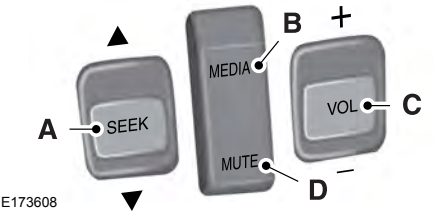
Note: *Pressing the adjustment control during memory recall cancels the operation.*

Easy Entry and Exit Feature

When you switch the ignition off, the steering column will move to allow extra room to exit your vehicle. The column will return to the previous setting when you switch the ignition on. You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

AUDIO CONTROL

You can operate the following functions with the control:



A	Seek up and down or next.
B	Media.
C	Volume up or down.
D	Mute.

MEDIA

Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio modes.

Seek, Next or Previous

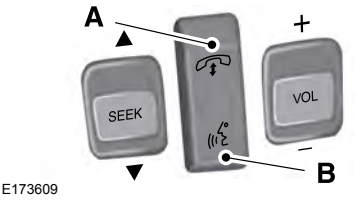
Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL (If Equipped)



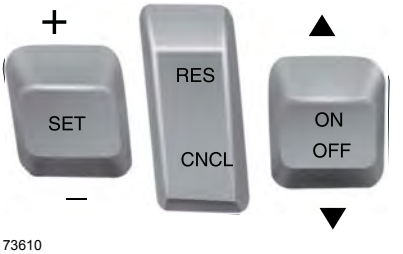
A Phone mode.

B Voice recognition.

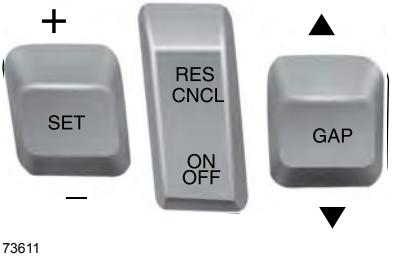
See your SYNC information.

CRUISE CONTROL

Type 1



Type 2



See **Cruise Control** (page 188).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL

See **Information Displays** (page 99).

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If Equipped)

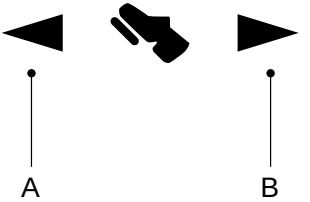
See your SYNC information.

ADJUSTING THE PEDALS

WARNING

Never use the controls while your feet are on the accelerator and brake pedals and the vehicle is moving.

You can find the control on the left side of the steering column. Press and hold the appropriate side of the control to move the pedals.



E162916

A. Farther

B. Closer

You can save and recall the pedal positions with the memory feature. See **Memory Function** (page 130).

Note: *Adjust the pedals only when your vehicle is in **P** (Park).*

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.*

Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 258).*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

E208496

Rotate the end of the control:

- Away from you to increase the wiper speed.
- Toward you to decrease the wiper speed.

Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.*

Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 258).*

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing. In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.

The autowipers feature uses a rain sensor, located in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns on the wipers. It adjusts the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

Note: *This autowiper feature is automatically set to on and remains on until you switch it off in the information display. You can also switch the feature back on at any time.*

E208496

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Set the control to low sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. Set the control to high sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

Note: *When you set the wiper system to intermittent wipe and the autowiper system is on, the autowiper sensitivity setting adjusts the wiper speed according to the moisture on the windshield only. Use the wiper lever to wipe the windshield on-demand.*

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*

E208497

Press the end of the wiper lever to activate the washer:

- A brief press causes a single wipe without washer fluid.
- A quick press and hold causes the wipers to swipe the windshield three times with washer fluid.
- A long press and hold activates the wipers and washer fluid for up to 10 seconds.

A wipe occurs a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. You can switch this feature on and off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 99).

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper

Note: *Make sure you switch off the wiper system before using an automatic car wash.*

E208498

Rotate the control to select:

2	Intermittent operation - the shortest pause between wipes.
1	Intermittent operation - the longest pause between wipes.
0	Off.

Rear Window Washer

E208498

Rotate and hold the control to the top or bottom position to activate the rear washer. The control returns to the **2** or **0** position when you release it.

Rear Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Operating the rear washer also operates the rear camera washer.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

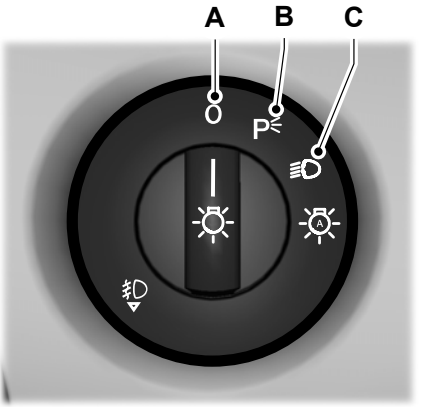
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

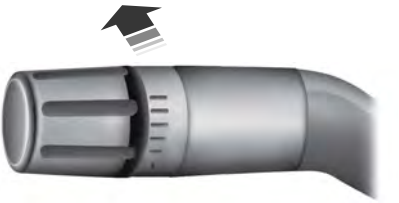
LIGHTING CONTROL



E156651

A	Off.
B	Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
C	Headlamps.

High Beams

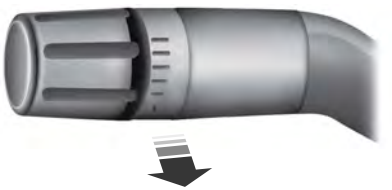


E167827

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever away from you again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beam off.

Headlamp Flasher



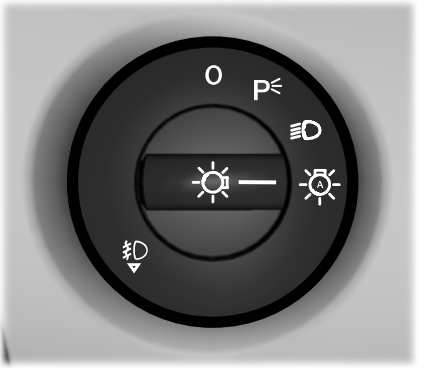
E163268

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS

WARNING

The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.



E158778

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers turn on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

Note: *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a single wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.

Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

E163270

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable lit components in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.

- Tap the top or bottom of the control to brighten/dim all interior lit components incrementally, or
- Press and hold at the first position the top or bottom of the control until the desired lighting level is reached.
- Press and hold the top of the control to the full on position to activate the “dome on” feature. This will turn on the interior courtesy lights. The lights will remain on until the bottom of the control is pressed.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

You can set the delay time to keep the headlamps on for up to three minutes after you switch off the ignition.

Follow the steps below to change the delay time (Steps 1 to 6 must be completed within 10 seconds):

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Select the autolamp position on the lighting control.
3. Turn the lighting control to the off position.
4. Switch the ignition on.
5. Switch the ignition off.
6. Select the autolamp position on the lighting control. The headlamps and parking lamps will turn on.
7. Turn the lighting control to the off position when the required delay time has been reached. The headlamps and parking lamps will turn off.

You can set the headlamp exit delay to one of the following settings:

- Off
- 10 seconds
- 20 seconds
- 120 seconds

Note: *You can adjust the time delay using the display controls in the instrument cluster. See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 99).*

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (If Equipped)

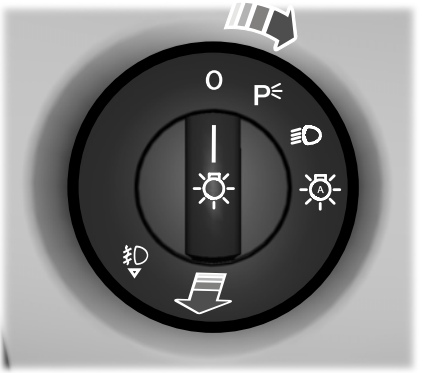
WARNING

Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

The system switches the signature lamps on in day light conditions.

To switch the system on, switch the ignition on, and switch the lighting control to the off, autolamp, or parking lamp position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E156823

Pull the lighting control toward you to switch the fog lamps on.

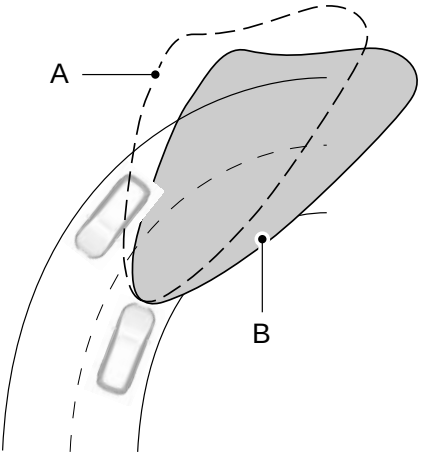
You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS (If Equipped)

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

A. Without adaptive headlamps.

B. With adaptive headlamps.



E161714

The system only works with the lighting control in the autolamp position.

Note: *There is a delay of two to five seconds before the system operates when you drive your vehicle.*

Note: *The system is only active at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).*

The system has a power-up movement check feature. When your start your vehicle, the lamps track left to right, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

E163272

- To operate the left-hand direction indicator, push the lever down until it stops.
- To operate the right-hand direction indicator, push the lever up until it stops.
- To manually cancel direction indicator operation, push the lever again in either direction.

Lane Change

To indicate a left or right lane change:

- Push the lever up or down to the first stop position and release. The direction indicator will flash three times and stop.
- Push the lever up or down to the first stop position and hold. The direction indicator will flash for as long as you hold the lever in this position.

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will switch on when you have met one of the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the outer edge of the clear lens on the front row map lamp.

Front Row Map Lamps

E166237

To switch on the map lamps, press the outer edge of the clear lens.

The front row map lamp will automatically turn on when:

- Any door is opened.
- You press and hold the top of the instrument lighting dimmer switch past the first detent.
- You press any of the remote entry controls and the ignition is in the off position.

Second Row Map Lamps

E173272

The second row lamps light when:

- Any door is open.
- You press and hold the top of the instrument lighting dimmer switch past the first detent.
- You press any of the remote entry controls and the ignition is in the off position.

Press the lamp lens to activate the reading lamps.

AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

Adjust the ambient lighting using the touchscreen.

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

E163056

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will automatically stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

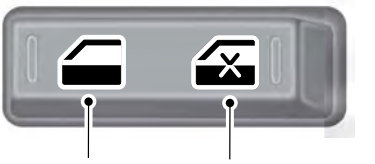
Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window will stop if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

Window Lock



E163057

A Unlock.

B Lock.

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls.

Accessory Delay

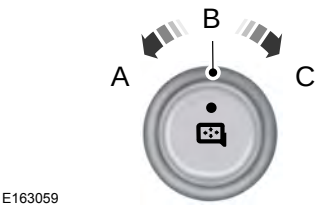
The window switches remain operational for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



A Left-hand mirror.

B Off.

C Right-hand mirror.

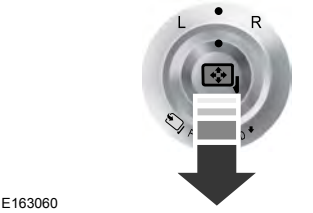
To adjust a mirror:

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust.
2. Move the control in the direction you want to tilt the mirror.
3. Return the control to the center position to lock the mirrors in place.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)



Note: *Moving the mirrors 10 or more times within one minute, or repeated folding and unfolding of the mirrors while holding the control down during full travel, may disable the system to protect the motors from overheating. Wait approximately three minutes with the vehicle running, and up to 10 minutes with the vehicle off, for the system to reset and for function to return to normal.*

Pull the control back to fold the mirrors in or out.

Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).

Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 130).

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The lamps on the bottom part of the mirror housing light when you use your transmitter to unlock the doors or when you open a door.

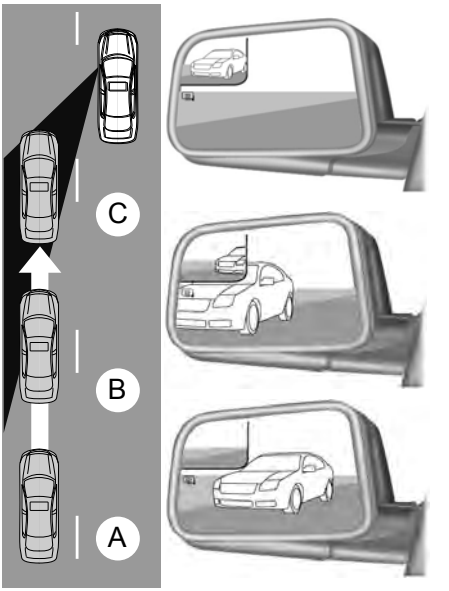
Integrated Blind Spot Mirror (If Equipped)

WARNING

Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They can assist you by increasing visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image transitions from the main mirror and begins to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle transitions to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 195).

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

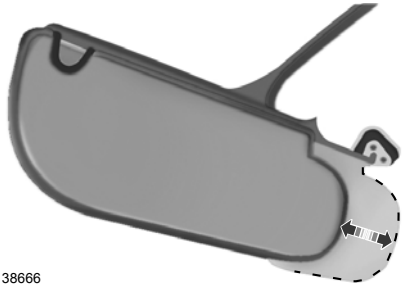
You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

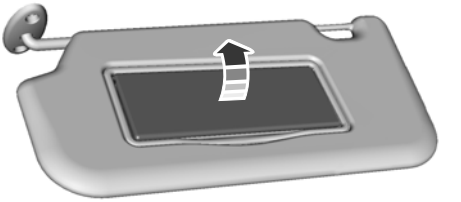
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

You can manually open or close the sliding shade when the moonroof is closed. Pull the shade toward the front of your vehicle to close it.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop it during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof

E163063

Press and release the **SLIDE** control to open the moonroof. The moonroof will stop short of the fully opened position.

Note: *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and release the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Pull and release the **SLIDE** control to close the moonroof.

Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

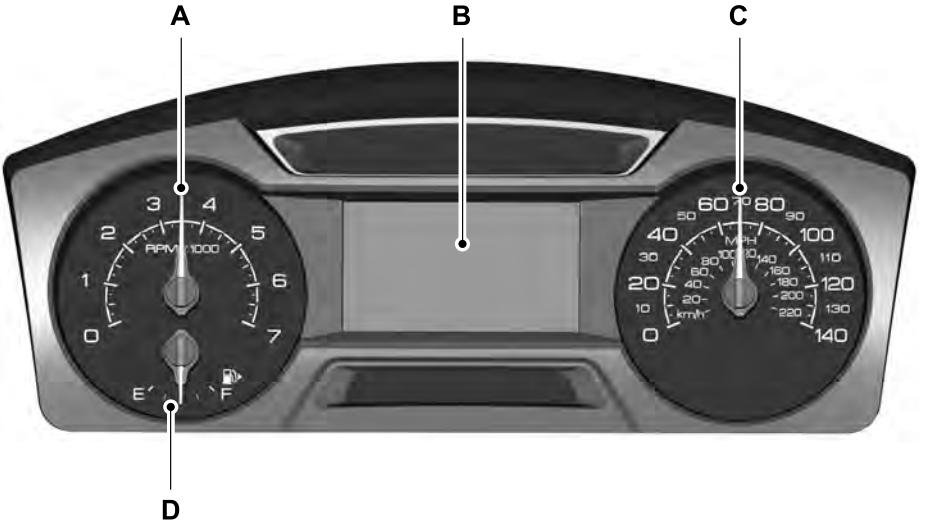
Pull and hold the **SLIDE** control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the **TILT** control to vent the moonroof. Pull and hold the **TILT** control to close the moonroof.

GAUGES

Note: *Cluster shown in standard measure – metric clusters similar.*



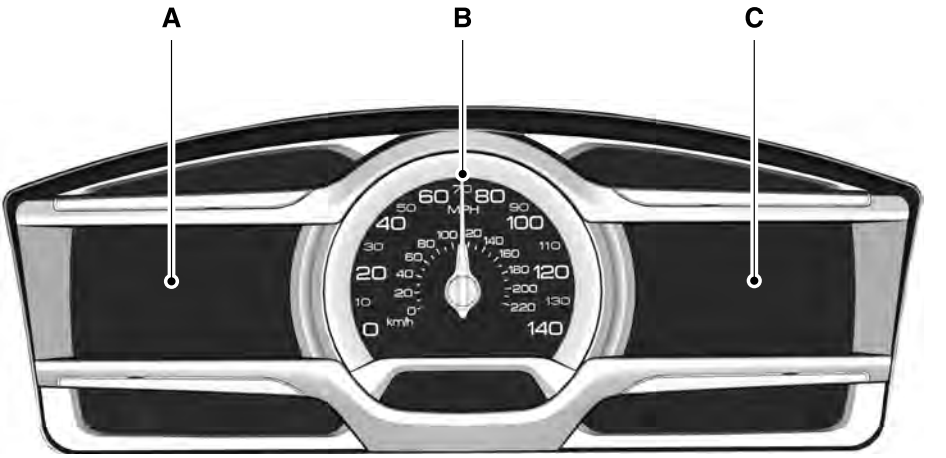
E212029

A Tachometer.

B Information Display. See **General Information** (page 99).

C Speedometer.

D Fuel Gauge.



E217329

A Left information display. See **General Information** (page 99).

B Speedometer.

C Right information display. See your SYNC information.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp, but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 189).

On (white light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

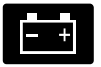
Airbag Readiness

If this light fails to illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer. A tone sounds when there is a malfunction.

Anti-Lock Braking System

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Battery



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Brake System

It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by your authorized dealer.

WARNING

Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Charging System

It illuminates when the battery is not charging properly.

If it stays on while the engine is running , there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)

It will illuminate when you switch this feature on.

Door Ajar

Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Coolant Temperature

Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 250).

Engine Oil

If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 248).

Note: *Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.*

Fasten Seatbelt

It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 39).

Front Airbag

If it fails to illuminate when you start your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Front Fog Lamps (If Equipped)

Lights when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Head Up Display (If Equipped)

A red beam of lights will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control and/or the collision warning system. It will also illuminate momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works.

High Beam

It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Liftgate Ajar

Illuminates when you do not completely close the liftgate.

Low Fuel Level

It will illuminate when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning

It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid

It will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Parking Lamps

It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

Powertrain Malfunction/Reduced Power

Illuminates when a powertrain or an AWD fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Service Engine Soon

If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 161).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

WARNING

Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 161).

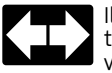
Stability Control

It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 179).

Stability Control Off

It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 179).

Directional Indicator



Illuminates when you switch on the left or right or the hazard warning flasher. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 260).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering wheel. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

This icon gives you the ability to switch a feature on or off. A check in the box indicates the feature is enabled, and unchecked indicates the feature is disabled.

Information Display Controls (Type 1)

E214426

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the ***OK*** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

- Trip 1 & 2
- Fuel Economy
- Information
- Settings

Trip 1 & 2

Trip 1 & 2
Speedometer
Trip distance
Average fuel economy
Elapsed trip time
Hold ***OK*** to Reset

Note: *Press and hold **OK** to reset the currently displayed trip information.*

Speedometer

Shows vehicle speed digitally.

Trip distance

Shows the accumulated trip distance.

Average fuel economy

Shows the average fuel economy for a given trip.

Elapsed trip time

When you switch off your vehicle the timer stops and restarts when you restart your vehicle.

Fuel Economy

Use the left or right arrow buttons to choose the desired fuel economy display.

Fuel Economy
Inst Fuel Econ
Average Fuel

Note: *Press and hold **OK** to reset the currently displayed fuel usage information.*

Inst Fuel Economy

This display shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.

Average Fuel

This display shows the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Information

Information
Intelligent AWD
MyKey® Distance (if key is programmed) — Distance traveled when a programmed key is in use.
MyKey® Information — Number of MyKeys and admin keys programmed)
Coolant Temp. — The engine coolant indicator will change colors indicating: blue for cool, gray for normal and red for hot. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

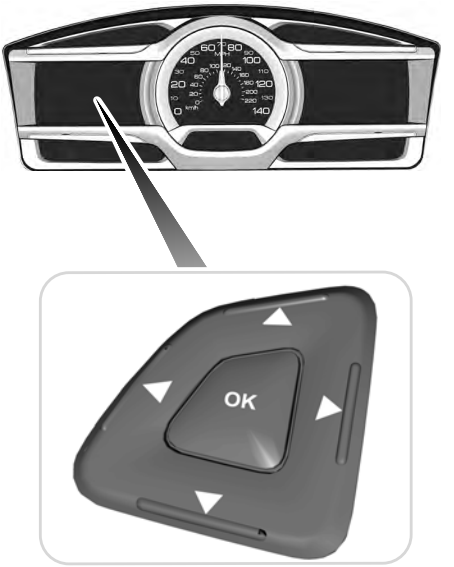
Settings

Settings			
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl		
	Blindspot		
	Collision Warn	Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low
		Chimes	
		Warning	
	Cross Traffic		
	Cruise Control	Adaptive or Normal	
	Front Park Aid		
	Rear Park Aid		
	Trailer Sway		
Display	Language	Select your applicable language	
	Units	Distance	Miles & GAL, l/100km or km/l
		Temperature	Fahrenheit (ºF) or Celsius (ºC)
Convenience	Auto Engine Off		

Settings			
	Auto Highbeam		
	Autolamp Delay	Autolamp Delay	
	Compass	Display	
		Calibrate	
		Set Zone	
	DTE calculation	Normal or Towing	
	Easy Entry/Exit		
	Locks	Autolock	
		Autounlock	
		Remote Unlock	All Doors or Driver's First
	Oil Life Reset	Set to XXX%	
	Power Liftgate	Switch Enabled or Switch Disabled	
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Auto or Last Settings
		Seats and Wheel or Seats	Automatic or Off
		Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes
		System	
	Windows	Remote Open	
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe	
		Rain Sensing	
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold ***OK*** to Create MyKey	
	911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable	
	Traction Ctrl		
	Max Speed	Choose desired speed or Off	
	Speed Minder		

Settings		
	Volume Limiter	
	Do Not Disturb	
	Clear MyKeys	Hold ***OK*** to Clear All MyKeys

Information Display Controls (Type 2)



E217330

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a menu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the ***OK*** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Main menu

From the main menu bar on the left side of the information display, you can choose from the following categories:

Scroll up or down to highlight one of the categories and then press the right arrow key or ***OK*** to enter into that category. Press the left arrow key as needed to exit back to the main menu.

- Display Mode
- Trip 1 & 2
- Fuel Economy
- Driver Assist
- Settings

Display Mode

Use the up or down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Display Mode	
Option 1	XXX mi (km) to empty, Fuel gauge and Total odometer
Option 2	Round tachometer, Fuel gauge and Total odometer
Option 3	Round tachometer, Engine coolant temp gauge, Fuel gauge and Total odometer
Option 4	Digital speedometer, Fuel gauge and Total odometer
Regardless of display mode chosen, when you use the SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST), the cluster will change to the round tachometer if not already selected.	

XXX mi (km) to empty

Shows approximate fuel level before the fuel tank reaches empty. The value is dynamic and can change (raise or lower) depending on driving style.

Fuel gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank. The arrow next to the fuel pump symbol shows the fuel filler door side of your vehicle. When the fuel level becomes low, the level indicator will change to amber. When the fuel level becomes critically low, the level indicator will change to red.

Note: *The fuel gauge level may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or when driving on a slope.*

Note: *When a MyKey® is in use, low fuel warnings will display earlier.*

Round tachometer

Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine. During SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) use, the currently selected gear will appear in the display.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

Trip 1 & 2

Choose between the following trip displays.

Trip 1 & 2
Trip distance
Average fuel economy
Elapsed trip time
Hold ***OK*** to Reset

Note: *Press and hold **OK** to reset the currently displayed trip information.*

Trip distance

Shows the accumulated trip distance.

Average fuel economy

Shows the average fuel economy for a given trip.

Elapsed trip time

When you switch off your vehicle the timer stops and restarts when you restart your vehicle.

Fuel Economy

Use the left or right arrow buttons to choose the desired fuel economy display.

Fuel Economy
Inst Fuel Economy
30 Min Fuel History

Note: *Press and hold **OK** to reset the currently displayed fuel usage information.*

Inst Fuel Economy

This display shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.

30 Min Fuel History

This display shows a bar chart of your fuel history.

Driver Assist

Use the up or down arrow buttons to choose between the following display options.

Note: *Some items are optional and may not appear.*

Driver Assist		
Traction Control		
Blindspot		
Collision Warn	Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low
Cross Traffic		
Cruise Control	Adaptive or Normal	—
Driver Alert		
Front Park Aid		
Rear Park Aid		

Settings

In this mode, you can configure different driver setting choices.

Note: *Some items are optional and may not appear.*

Settings				
Vehicle	Drive Control	Handling in D	Sport, Normal or Comfort	
		Handling in S	Sport or Normal	
	Auto Engine Off			
	DTE Calculation	Normal or Towing		
	Easy Entry / Exit			
	Lighting	Adaptive Head Lamps	Traffic Set Up	Right Hand or Left Hand Traffic
		Auto Highbeam	On or Off	
		Autolamp Delay	Select time interval	
	Locks	Autolock		
		Autounlock		
		Remote Unlocking	All doors or Driver door	
	Oil Life Reset	Remaining Life XXX% - Hold ***OK*** to Reset		
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Auto or Last Settings	
		Seats and Wheel or Seats	Auto Heated or Off	
		Duration	5, 10 or 15 minutes	
		System		
	Windows	Remote Open		
		Remote Close		
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe		
		Rain Sensing		
MyKey	Mykey Status	MyKeys and Admin Keys		

Settings		
	Create MyKey	Hold ***OK*** to Create MyKey
	911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable
	Traction Control	
	Max Speed	Choose desired speed or off
	Speed Minder	
	Volume Limiter	On or Off
	Do Not Disturb	Always On or User Selectable
	MyKey Report	On or Off
	Clear MyKeys	Hold ***OK*** to Clear All MyKeys
Display Settings	Distance	Miles & GAL, l/100km or km/l
	Gauge Display	Fuel Gauge or Fuel + Tach
	Language	Choose your applicable setting - Hold ***OK*** to Set
	Temper-ature	Fahrenheit (ºF) or Celsius (ºC)

Note: *Some MyKey items will only appear if a MyKey is set.*

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on the vehicle options equipped with your vehicle, not all of the messages will display or be available. Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.*

E173229

Press the ***OK*** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. Other messages will be removed automatically after a short time.

Certain messages need to be confirmed before you can access the menus.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 189).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 189).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 189).

AdvanceTrac™

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
AdvanceTrac Off On	The traction control has been disabled or enabled by the driver.

Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	The alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 74).

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine Shuts Off In {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine Shut Off For Fuel Economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds Press Ok to Override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

AWD

Message	Action
AWD OFF	Displays if the AWD system disables to protect itself. This may occur if you operate the vehicle after installing the compact spare tire, if the system is overheating or if there is an issue with another vehicle system that prevents the AWD system from operating. The AWD system resumes normal operation and clears this message after you install the road tire and you switch the ignition on and off, or after you allow the system to cool. If this message remains on, have a qualified technician service your vehicle to repair other vehicle systems.
Check AWD	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly and the powertrain fault indicator is illuminated. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 94). If the warning stays illuminated or continues to illuminate, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Check Charging System	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Turn Power Off To Save Battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The system sensors are blocked. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 195).
Vehicle Coming From X	The system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 195).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 195).
Cross Traffic System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Brake System

Message	Action
Brake Fluid Level Low	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 255).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Engaged	The parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive your vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Collision Warning System

Message	Action
Collision Warning Malfunction	There is a system malfunction with the collision warning system. The system will be disabled. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Collision Warning Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The collision warning system radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of the radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Collision Warning Not Available	There is a system malfunction with the collision warning system. The system will be disabled. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Doors and Locks

Message	Action
X Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	The luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Engine ON	The driver's door is opened, your vehicle is in park and the engine is on.

Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Keys and Intelligent Access

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	A reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
No Key Detected	The key is not detected by the system. See **Keyless Starting** (page 149).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	The Start Stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and an Intelligent Access key is not detected inside your vehicle.
Accessory Power is Active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Programmed x Keys Total	During spare key programming, an intelligent access key is programmed to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	During spare key programming, the maximum number of keys have been programmed.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 248).
Oil Change Required	The oil life left reaches 0%. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 248).
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Message	Action
Washer Fluid Level Low	The washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled.
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
Factory Mode Contact Dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not Created	MyKey cannot be programmed during key programming .
MyKey Active Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	When a MyKey is in use, the MyKey speed limit is on and your vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
Check Speed Drive Safely	MyKey is active.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	A MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
Could Not Program Integrated Key	An attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 180).
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 180).
Rear Park Aid On Off	The park aid status.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Service Power Steering Now	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

Seats

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	Objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 290).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 290).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 290). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction Control Off	Displays the status of the traction control system. See **Using Traction Control** (page 177).

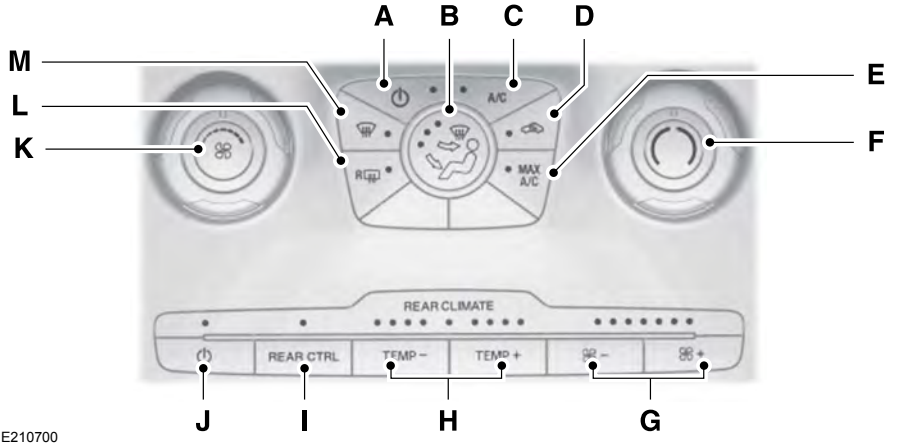
Transmission

Message	Action
Shift to Park	You switched the engine off and shift select lever is in any position other than P (Park).

Towing

Message	Action
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	The system detects trailer sway, so you need to reduce your speed.

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



A **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

B **Air distribution control:** Adjust to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through the following combinations: windshield, windshield/floor, panel, panel/floor, and floor.

C **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

D **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

E **MAX A/C:** Adjust for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

F **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

G **Rear fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated to the rear of the passenger compartment.

H **Rear passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature to the rear of the passenger compartment.

I **Rear climate control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

J **Rear passenger power:** Press to switch the system on and off.

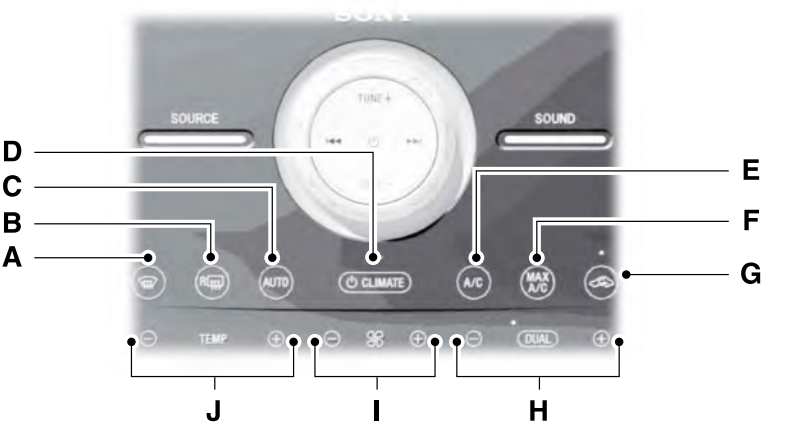
K **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

L **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off.

M **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See your SYNC information.*



E244350

A **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents and de-mister. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

B **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).

C **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

D **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

E **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

F **MAX A/C:** Press for maximum cooling. The driver and passenger settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

G **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with A/C) and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn on and off automatically (or prevent you from switching on) in all modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging or to improve cooling efficiency.

H **DUAL:** Adjust the temperature setting on the passenger side.

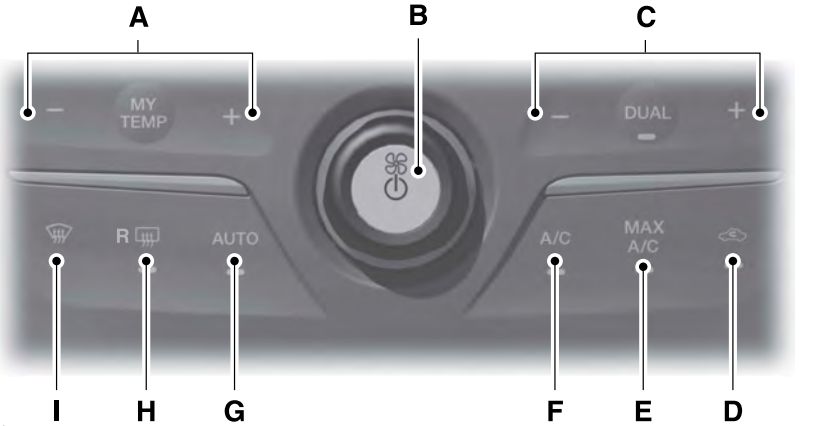
I **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

J **TEMP:** Adjust the temperature setting on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See your SYNC information.*



E210701

A **MY TEMP:** Adjust the temperature setting on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

B **Power and Fan Speed Control:** Press to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle. Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

C **DUAL:** Adjust the temperature setting on the passenger side.

D **Recirculated air:** Press to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

E **MAX A/C:** Adjust for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

F **A/C:** Press to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

G **AUTO:** Press to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding for more than two seconds.

H **Heated rear window:** Press to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 123).

I **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the windows fog up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

Note: *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the interior to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the full heat setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.	Press the **MAX A/C** button.
2	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.	

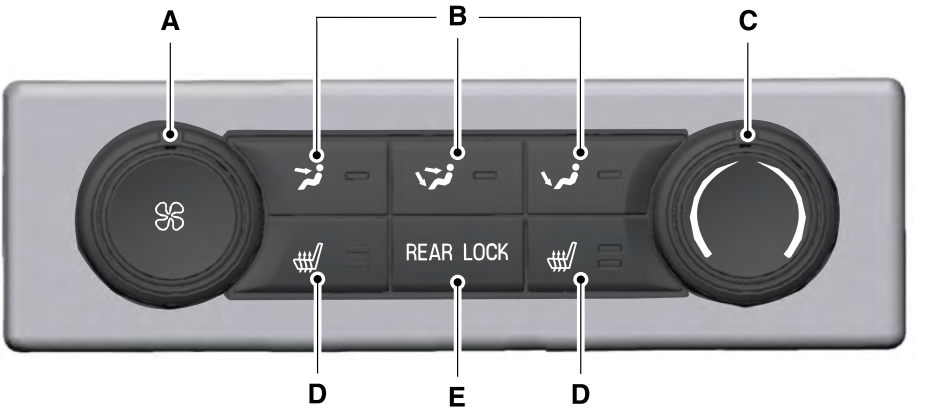
Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press the **A/C** button if the indicator is off.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting.	

REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS



E210706

A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

B **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the instrument panel or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

C **Temperature control:** Control the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

D **Heated seats:** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 138).

E **Fan speed control lock:** When illuminated, you can only operate the rear passenger settings through the front controls.

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: *Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.*

Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated rear window on.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START (If Equipped)

The system adjusts the interior temperature depending on your chosen settings during remote start.

You cannot adjust the climate control setting during remote start operation. When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system will return to the previous settings. You can now make adjustments.

You need to switch on certain vehicle-dependent features, such as:

- Heated seats.
- Cooled seats.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.

Note: *Passenger heated and cooled seats only remain on during remote start if they were on when you switched the vehicle off (if equipped).*

You can adjust the default remote start settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

Automatic Settings

In hot weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).

In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools (based on pre-selected settings). The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated or cooled seats do not automatically switch on.

In cold weather, the system is set to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats and heated steering wheel are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically switch on.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

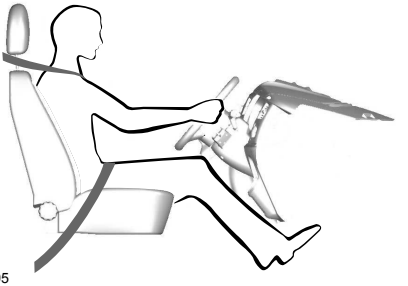
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

Do not recline the seatback as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Do not place objects higher than the seatback to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

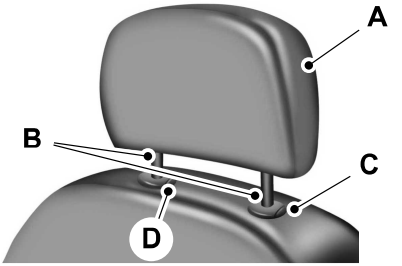
The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. An improperly adjusted head restraint may provide reduced protection to an occupant during certain rear impacts

WARNINGS

Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

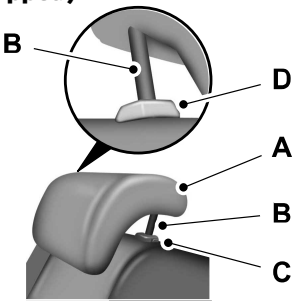
Note: *Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Front seat head restraints



E138642

Second-row center seat head restraint (If equipped)



E138645

The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
D	Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

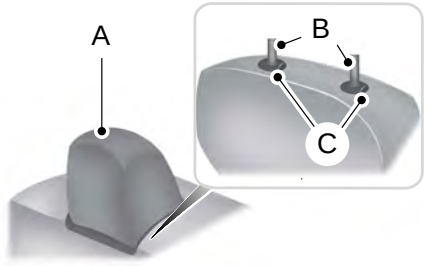
1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Second-row outboard seat head restraints



E162872

The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve unlock and remove buttons.

The outboard head restraints are non-adjustable, but they can be removed.

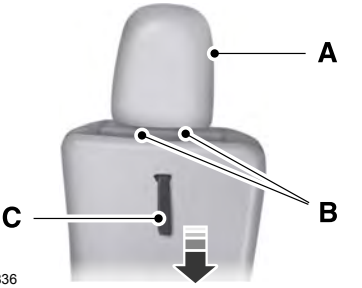
Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the C buttons.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Third-row head restraints (if equipped)



E190836

The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Fold strap.

Folding the Head Restraint

Pull the fold strap (C). Pull the head restraint back up to reset.

Note: *Press the stow or fold button on the power folding seats to automatically fold the head restraint.*

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

MANUAL SEATS (If Equipped)

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing loss of control of your vehicle.

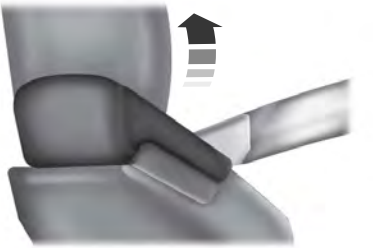
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

E190838

Recline Adjustment

WARNING

Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E190837

Lumbar Adjustment (If Equipped)

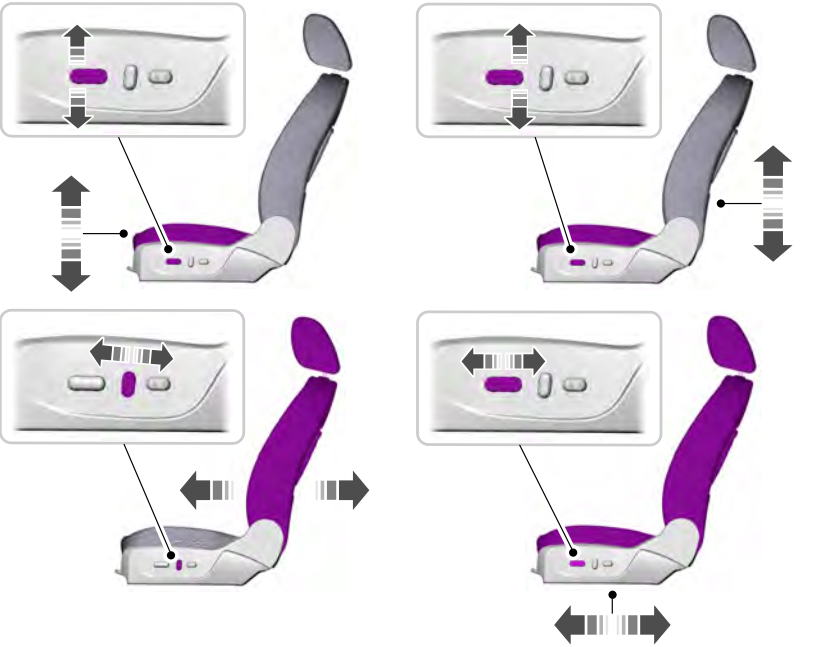
E209846

POWER SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



E138647

Power Lumbar (If Equipped)

E138648

MEMORY FUNCTION (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the following:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.
- Optional power steering column.
- Optional power adjustable foot pedals.

The memory control is on the driver door.

E205043

Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to two preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The memory features move to the position stored for that preset.

You can recall a programmed memory position:

- Only in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on.
- In any gearshift position if the ignition is not on.

You can also recall a programmed memory position by:

- Pressing your remote control transmitter unlock button (if the remote control is programmed to a memory position).
- Unlocking your vehicle with an intelligent access key (if it is programmed to a memory position).
- Entering a programmed personal entry code on the Securicode keypad. See **Doors and Locks** (page 63).

Note: *Using a linked keyfob to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat to the Easy Entry position.*

Note: *Adjusting any active memory feature or pressing a memory switch during a memory recall cancels the operation.*

Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key Fob

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to two remote controls.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.
2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds. Continue holding until you hear a second tone.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Note: *If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

Easy Entry and Exit Feature (If Equipped)

This feature adjusts the position of the seat and steering column to allow easier exit and entry to the vehicle.

The driver seat automatically moves 2 inches (5 centimeters) rearward when the transmission is in park (P) and you remove the key from the ignition or you switch the ignition off.

The driver seat and steering wheel return to their previous positions when you put the key in the ignition or switch the ignition on.

You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 99).

REAR SEATS

Adjusting the Rear Seats

Second Row Seats

WARNINGS

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

Recline Adjustment

E209847

Note: *For the bench seat only, make sure the center seatbelt is unbuckled before folding the seatback.*

Lift the handle to adjust the seatback rearward or forward. You can also fold the seatback forward until it is flat.

Moving the Seats Backward and Forward (If equipped)

E190838

Power Fold and Tumble Seat

WARNING

Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

This feature is available for the right-hand seat on seven-passenger vehicles and on both sides for six-passenger vehicles.

E190848

The control is at the back of the rear door opening. Press it to fold the seatback down and tumble the seat forward for access to the third row.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off, the power fold feature works until the battery saver turns it off after 10 minutes. You can reactivate the power seats by pressing the unlock button on the remote entry key fob or by using the unlock procedure on the keyless entry keypad. See* ***Doors and Locks*** *(page 63). Keep the key in the accessory or run position to prevent the feature from timing out.*

Third Row Seats (Accessing the Seat)

WARNINGS

Check under the seat cushion to make sure no cargo or objects are under the seat cushion before returning the seat cushion to its original position, and that the seat cushion locks into place. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly in the event of a crash, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

Do not adjust a seat or release a seat floor latch when the vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in a sudden stop or crash.

Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

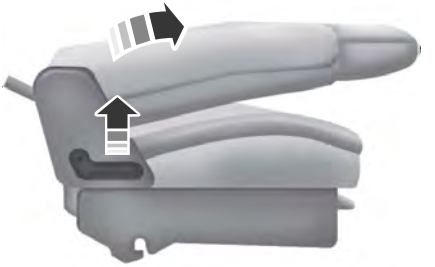
Note: *Remove items from the second-row seat. Make sure that no bulky objects such as purses or briefcases are on the floor in front of the second-row seats before tumbling them.*

Note: *For second-row bench seats, make sure the center seatbelt is unbuckled before folding the seatback.*

Note: *You may have to move the front-row seat forward to allow the second-row seat to be fully tumbled.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Fold and tumble the second-row seat to access the third row.



E209848

1. Lift the handle on the side of the seat. The seatback folds flat.

E190844

2. Lift the handle all the way up until the seat releases from the floor. Rotate the seat forward to allow access to the third row. **Note:** The seatback must be folded flat in order to release the floor latches. Make sure that there are no objects on the seat cushion that may restrict the seatback from folding flat.

E190845

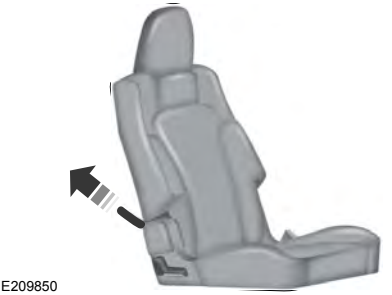
3. To return the seatback to the floor from the tumbled position, rotate the seat down until you hear it latching to the floor.

E209849

4. Lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle, and rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position.

Note: *The seatback will not raise if the rear latch hooks are not properly engaged to the floor striker. If the seatback does not raise, then repeat Step 4.*

Third Row Seat Exit



E209850

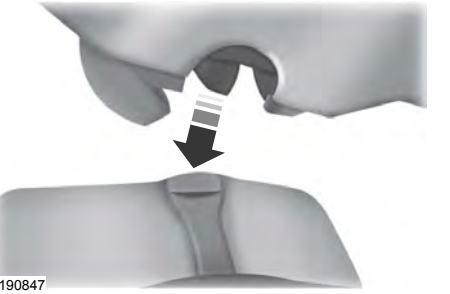
1. Pull on the strap on the back of the second row seat. This folds the seatback forward. Pull the strap a second time to tumble the seat forward, allowing easy exit from the third row seat. **Note:** You must fold the seatback flat in order to release the floor latches. Make sure that there are no objects on the seat cushion that may restrict the seatback from folding flat.

E190850

2. To return the seatback to the floor from the tumbled position, rotate the seat down until you hear it latching to the floor.

E209849

3. Lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle, and rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position. **Note:** The seatback will not raise if the rear latch hooks are not properly engaged to the floor striker. If the seatback does not raise, then repeat steps 3 and 4.



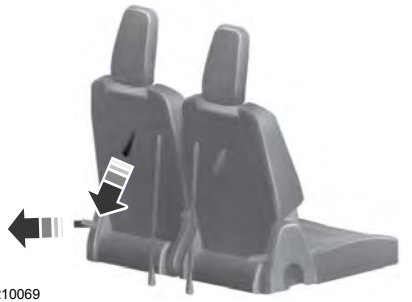
E190847

4. Make sure that the rear latch hooks are properly engaged with the floor striker.

Note: *Make sure that the seat and seatback are latched securely in position. Keep floor area free of objects that would prevent proper seat engagement.*

Stowing the Third Row Seat

Note: *Remove all objects from the seat and stowage tub. Objects in the seat or stowage tub may cause serious damage to the seat upholstery and cause improper seat function.*



E210069

1. From the rear of the vehicle, stow the head restraints by pulling the strap on the middle of the seatback just below the head restraint. Then, fold the seatback by pulling and holding the red strap while pushing the seatback forward. Release the strap once the seatback starts rotating forward.

E209852

2. Release the cushion latches by pulling the short black strap while pulling on the strap at the top of the seatback. This tumbles the seat all the way into the floor tub.

Note: *Do not use the seat anchors as cargo tie downs.*

E209853

Note: *Do not use the third row seat back as a load floor when the seatback is folded. Sharp objects may result in damage to seat upholstery.*

Note: *Make sure that the area under the seat is free of objects before stowing it.*

Unstowing the Third Row Seat

WARNING

Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Make sure that there are no objects such as books, purses or brief cases on the load floor before unstowing the seat. Failure to remove all objects from the top of the load floor prior to unstowing it may cause damage to the seat.*

Note: *Make sure the area under the forward portion of the load floor is free of objects before unstowing the third row seat.*

E209854

1. Unlatch and lift the seat out of the floor tub by squeezing and pulling up on the handle. Once the seat is at a vertical position, push the seat over, letting it fall onto the latches.

E209852

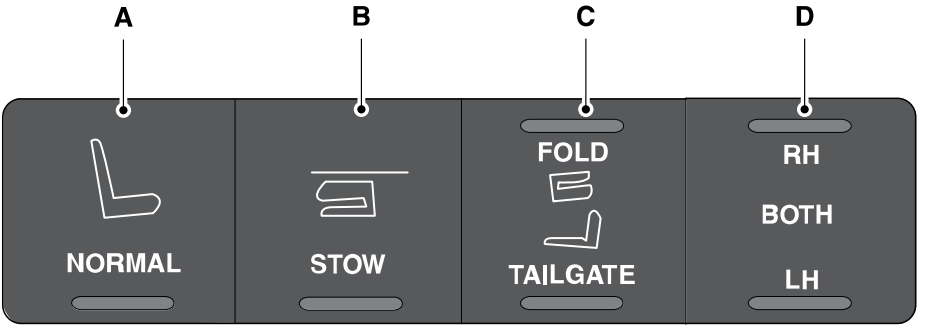
2. To return the seatback to the upright position, pull the red strap. Then, while holding the red strap, pull the long strap on the seatback to raise the seatback.
3. Pull the head restraints up to their normal positions.

PowerFold™Third Row Seats (If equipped)

The third row seat features a power one-touch operation that allows you to adjust the left, right, or both seats into a NORMAL, STOW, FOLD, or TAILGATE position with just one touch of a button.

Note: *The power fold seats work only when the transmission is in park (P) and the tailgate is open. If the ignition is off and the feature is still running, the battery saver turns it off after 10 minutes. You can reactivate the power seats by pressing the unlock button on the remote entry key fob or by using the unlock procedure on the keyless entry keypad. See* ***Keyless Entry*** *(page 70). Keep the key in the accessory or run position to prevent the feature from timing out.*

The third row power seat buttons are behind the third row seats on the left-hand quarter trim panel.



E209855

A Press to return the seat to the normal seating position.

B Press to stow the seat into the tub floor.

C Press the top of the button to fold down the seatback. Press the bottom portion of the button to put the seat into the tailgate position.

D Press to select either right-hand seat, the left-hand seat or both.

Note: *The third row seat includes obstacle detection that allows the seat to stop and reverse direction if it hits an obstacle so that the obstacle can be removed.*

Note: *Pressing a different button while the power seat feature is already being performed may cause the first selected seat movement to be cancelled. Allow the first seat movement to be completed before pressing a button for another function.*

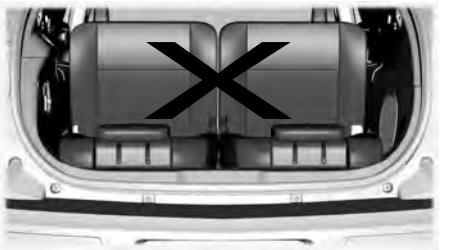
Note: *Make sure that there are no objects such as books, purses or briefcases on the load floor before unstowing the seat. Failure to remove all objects from the top of the load floor prior to unstowing it may cause damage to the seat.*

Note: *In order to allow the seat to complete the stowed position, do not place objects under the seat before stowing. Remove all objects from the seat and stowage tub.*

Note: *In the unlikely event that the third row power seat stops prematurely or travels to an unexpected position, press the FOLD button (C) to reset the seat and return it to a normal position.*

WARNING

Do not sit in seats that are rearward facing when your vehicle is moving. This is not a correct seating position and the seatbelts do not properly function this way. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in a sudden stop or crash.



E245760

HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

Front Seats

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Note: *You must switch the ignition on to use this feature.*

E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Second Row Heated Seats (If Equipped)

WARNING

Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Note: *You must switch the ignition on to use this feature.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

(If Equipped)

Heated Seats

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

Note: *You must switch the ignition on to use this feature.*

E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

Cooled Seats

Note: *You must switch the ignition on to use this feature.*

E146309

Press the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cool settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

Climate Controlled Seat Air Filter Replacement

Your vehicle is equipped with lifetime air filters that are integrated with the seats. Regular maintenance or replacement is not required.

HomeLink Wireless Control System

WARNINGS

Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.

Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note: *Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.*

Note: *We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See* ***Erasing the Function Button Codes****.*

Note: *You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See* ***Erasing the Function Button Codes****.*

E142657

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the driver's sun visor.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. As well as being programmed for garage doors, the system transmitter can be programmed to operate entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at www.homelink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or by calling the toll-free help line on 1-800-355-3515.

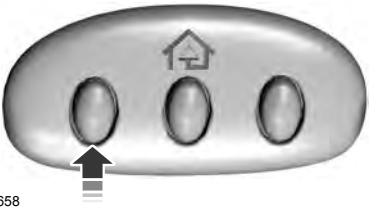
In-Vehicle Programming

This process is to program your hand-held transmitter and your in-vehicle HomeLink button.

Note: *The programming steps below assume you will be programming HomeLink that was not previously programmed.*

Note: *Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This will ensure quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing



E142658

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, turn your ignition to the **on** position, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 2–6 in (5–14 cm) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously, press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the hand-held transmitter button. DO NOT release either one until the HomeLink indicator light flashes slowly and then rapidly. When the indicator light flashes rapidly, both buttons may be released. The rapid flashing indicates successful training.

Note: *You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener. See* ***Gate Operator / Canadian Programming.***

4. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate, watch the HomeLink indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on, the programming is complete. No further action is needed.

If the indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, the HomeLink button is not programmed yet. See **Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor.**

To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: *You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.*

E142659

1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.

E142658

3. Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

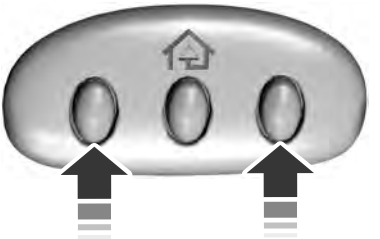
Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to “time-out” (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to “time-out” in the same manner.

Note: *If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent possible overheating.*

1. Press and hold the HomeLink button while you press and release, **every two seconds**, your hand-held transmitter until the HomeLink indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light.
2. Release both the HomeLink and hand-held transmitter buttons.
3. Continue programing HomeLink. See **In-Vehicle Programming**.

Erasing the Function Button Codes

Note: *You cannot erase individual buttons.*



E142660

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights above the buttons flash rapidly.
2. When the indicator lights flash, release the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

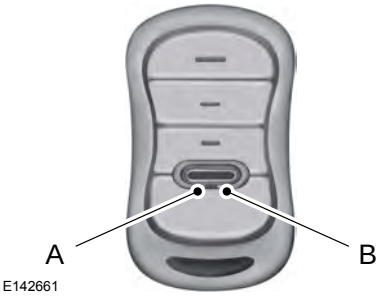
For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at www.homelink.com, www.youtube.com/HomeLinkGentex or 1-800-355-3515.

Programming to a Genie Intellicode 2 Garage Door Opener

Note: *The Genie Intellicode 2 transmitter must already be programmed to operate with the garage door opener.*

Note: *To program HomeLink to the transmitter you must first put the transmitter into programming mode.*

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing



A. Red indicator light

B. Green indicator light

1. Press and hold one of the buttons on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from green to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change to programming mode. If done properly the indicator light will appear red.
3. Hold the transmitter within 1–3 inches (2–8 centimeters) of the button on the visor you want to program.
4. Press and hold both the programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter and the button you want to program. The indicator light on the visor will flash rapidly when the programming is successful.

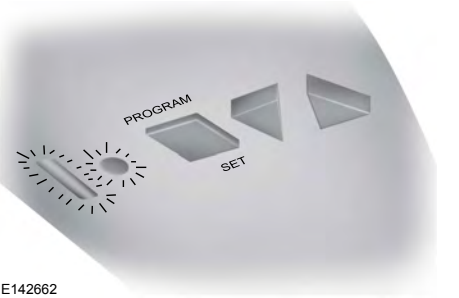
Note: *The Genie transmitter will transmit for up to 30 seconds. If HomeLink does not program within 30 seconds the Genie transmitter will need to be pressed again. If the Genie transmitter indicator light displays green and red, release the button until the indicator light turns off before pressing the button again.*

Once HomeLink has been programmed successfully, the Genie transmitter must be changed out of program mode. To do this:

1. Press and hold the previously programmed Genie button on the hand-held transmitter for 10 seconds. The indicator light will change from red to red and green.
2. Press the same button twice to confirm the change. If done correctly the indicator light will turn green.

Programming HomeLink to the Genie Intellicode Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: *You may need a ladder to access the garage door opener motor.*



1. Press and hold the program button on the garage door opener motor until both blue indicator lights turn on.
2. Release the program button. Only the smaller round indicator light should be on.
3. Press and release the program button. The larger purple indicator light will flash.

Note: *The next two steps must be completed in 30 seconds.*

4. Press and release the Genie Intellicode 2 hand-held transmitter's previously programmed button. Both indicator lights on the garage door opener motor unit should now flash purple.

5. Press and hold the previously programmed button on the visor for 2 seconds. Repeat this step up to 3 times until the garage door moves.

Programming is now complete.

Clearing a HomeLink Device

To erase programming from the three HomeLink buttons press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. The indicator light will begin flashing in 10 to 20 seconds, at which time both buttons should be released. Programming has now been erased, and the indicator light should blink slowly to indicate the device is in train mode when any of the three HomeLink buttons are pressed.

FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNINGS

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Do not use a power point for operating a cigar lighter. Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

Note: *Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the power point and blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the rear cargo area.
- On the passenger side floor panel.

110 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *The power point will turn off when the ignition is switched off or the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.*

Use the power point for powering electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

E193395

Note: *Depending on your vehicle, the power point cover may open to the right or upward.*

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on and a device is plugged in.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off or no device is plugged in.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

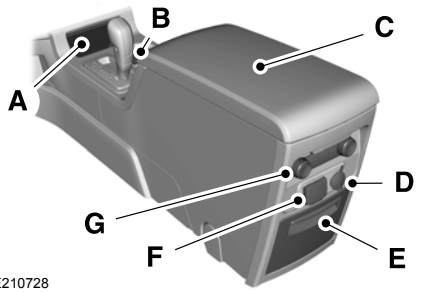
Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

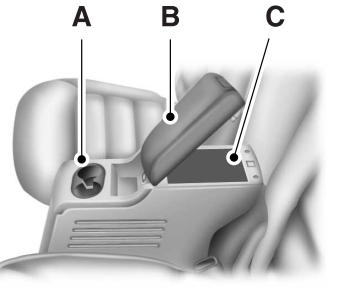
Available console features include:



E210728

A	Front storage compartment.
B	Cup holder.
C	Center storage compartment with auxiliary power point and media hub.
D	Auxiliary power point or cigar lighter.
E	Rear storage compartment.
F	Auxiliary power point.
G	Rear climate controls.

Second Row Center Console (If Equipped)

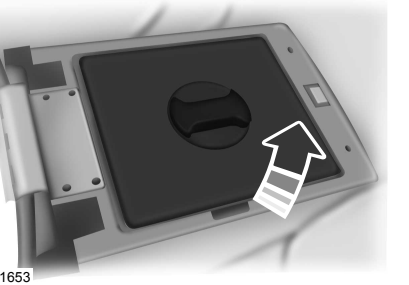


E211667

A	Cup holder.
B	Armrest.
C	Utility compartment and refrigerator unit.

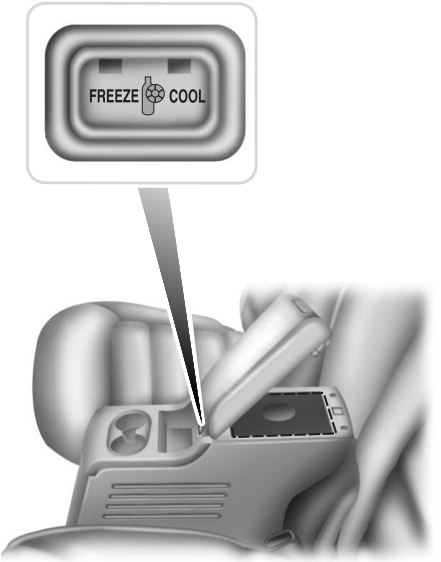
Console Refrigerator and Freezer (If Equipped)

This feature will operate when the vehicle is on or in accessory mode. Limit the time of use when the vehicle is in accessory mode to avoid the vehicle battery running out of charge. You should only use this feature when the vehicle is running.



E211653

Flip the console lid forward, then lift off the cover to open the cooling compartment. Make sure to replace the cover after using it. This helps maintain a more consistent cooling temperature.



E211668

Refrigerator: Briefly press and hold COOL. The indicator light on the cool side of the switch will illuminate and the indicator light on the freeze side will glow when the refrigerator is active. The temperature will cool to approximately 41ºF (5ºC). Briefly press and hold COOL again to switch off the refrigerator. Briefly press and hold FREEZE to change to freezer mode.

Freezer: Briefly press and hold FREEZE. Both indicator lights will illuminate when the freezer is active. The temperature will cool to approximately 23ºF (-5ºC). Press FREEZE again to switch off the freezer. Press COOL to change to refrigerator mode.

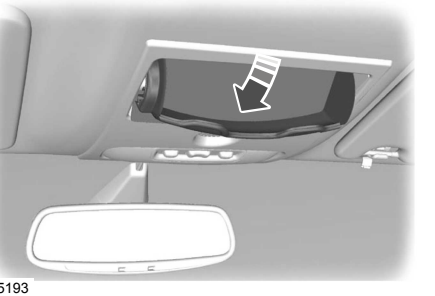
This feature turns off when you switch the vehicle off. It turns back on to the last mode when you restart the vehicle.

Cleaning and Maintenance

Note: *Condensation on the inside walls of the refrigerator is normal under certain conditions.*

This feature is maintenance free, but you can clean the inside of the unit and the cover with a mild soap and water solution when needed.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

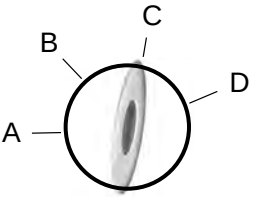
Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH (If Equipped)



E163165

A (off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

B (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

C (on) - All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

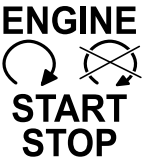
D (start) - Cranks the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING (If Equipped)

Note: *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.*

Note: *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Ignition Modes



E191075

The keyless starting system has three modes:

Off: Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

On: All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

Note: *You may have to press the push button ignition switch twice to switch the ignition on.*

Start: Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal, and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when then ignition is on and when the engine starts.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).
- Switch the ignition on. For vehicles with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Turn the key to the start position to start the engine.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.*

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

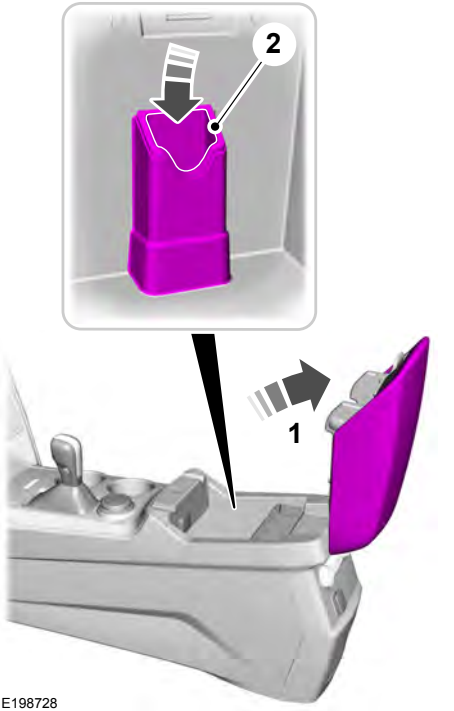
Note: *You must have your intelligent access key in your vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of park (P).*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



E198728

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Insert the passive key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 20 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key. You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid passive key within 20 seconds.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a keyless ignition, this feature automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle, for example pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 99). The feature only remains off for the current ignition cycle.
- During the 30-second countdown, the system prompts you to press OK or RESET to temporarily switch the feature off for the current ignition cycle only.

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Switch the ignition off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.*

Note: *If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P).
3. Press and hold the push button ignition switch, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (3 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

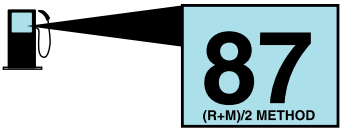
When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. We do not recommend these fuels.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 209).

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 156).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
5. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

REFUELING

WARNINGS

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

WARNINGS

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

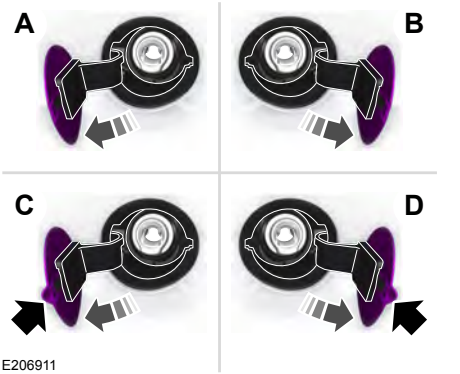
Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Note: *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*



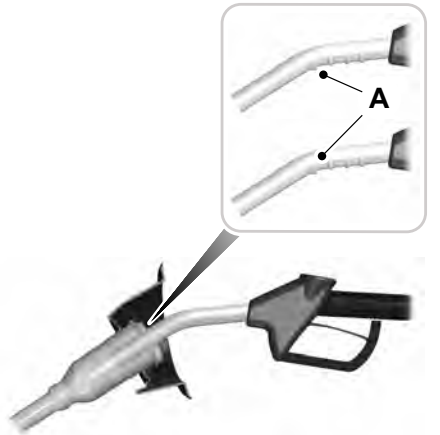
A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel tank filler door to open it.

D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel tank filler door to open it.

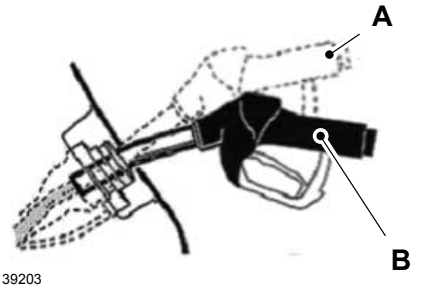
1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E139202

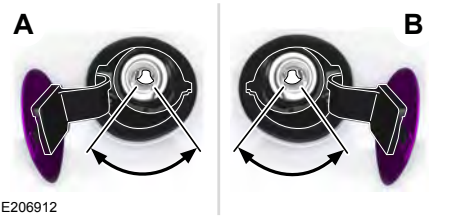
Note: *When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.*

2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E206912

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.

Note: *Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.*

System Warnings (If Equipped)

If the fuel filler inlet does not fully close a warning message appears in the information display.

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
4. Check the fuel filler inlet and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement.

5. Insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle in to the fuel tank filler pipe opening. This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel filler inlet from fully closing.

Note: *If this action corrects the problem the message may not reset immediately. If the message remains and the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the information display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than one automatic shut-off when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,200 km) to 3,000 mi (4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy.

Conditions

- Heavily loading your vehicle reduces fuel economy.
- Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle may reduce fuel economy.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You will get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter that will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.

When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 157).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always apply the parking brake fully and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).

E142628

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

Sport (S)

Moving the gearshift lever to sport (S):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This increases engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (If Equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever:

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.

E142629

If equipped with steering wheel paddles:

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the sport (S) position.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.

E144821

The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear.

Note: *The system stays in manual control until you make another shift selection (for example, drive [D]).*

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

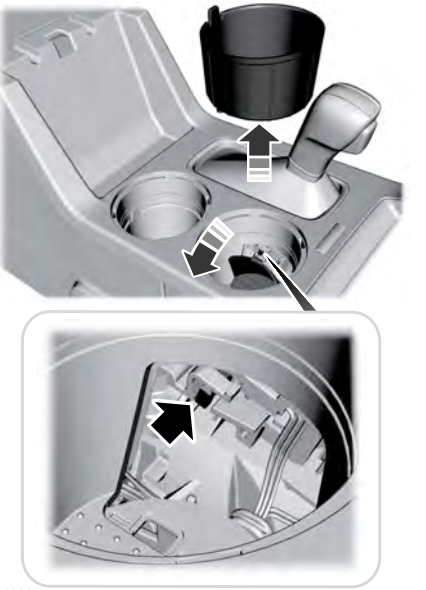
Note: *For some markets this feature will be disabled.*

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 233).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):

1. Apply the parking brake, turn the ignition off and remove the key.



E211089

2. Remove the cup holder insert.
3. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), release the tab to the access door and remove.
4. Locate the brake shift interlock lever on the passenger side of the shifter assembly.
5. Apply the brake pedal. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), press down and hold the brake shift interlock lever while pulling the gearshift lever out of park (P) and into neutral (N).
6. Install the access door and cup holder insert.
7. Apply the brake pedal, start the vehicle, and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

Note: *Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.*

Note: *When an AWD system fault is present, the warning Check AWD displays in the information display. The AWD system is not functioning correctly and defaults to front-wheel drive. When this warning displays, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The **AWD OFF** message may also appear in the information display if the AWD system overheats and defaults to front-wheel drive. This may occur if the vehicle is operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine has been restarted and the AWD system has adequately cooled, the **AWD OFF** message will turn off and normal AWD function returns. If the engine is not stopped, the **AWD OFF** message turns off when the system cools and normal AWD function returns.*

All-Wheel Drive Messages

AWD Messages	Action / Description
AWD OFF	Displays if the AWD system disables to protect itself. This may occur if you operate the vehicle after installing the compact spare tire, if the system is overheating or if there is an issue with another vehicle system that prevents the AWD system from operating. The AWD system resumes

AWD Messages	Action / Description
	normal operation and clears this message after you install the road tire and you switch the ignition on and off, or after you allow the system to cool. If this message remains on, have a qualified technician service your vehicle to repair other vehicle systems.
Check AWD	Displayed in conjunction with the power-train malfunction/reduced power light when the system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Operating AWD Vehicles With Spare Tires

A spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. The AWD system may disable automatically and enter front-wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components if a non-full sized tire is installed. This condition may display an ***AWD OFF*** message in the information display. If there is an ***AWD OFF*** message in the information display from using a non-full sized spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and cycling the ignition off and on. It is recommended to reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles (for example, 17 inch low profile tires on the front axle and 22 inch high profile tires on the rear axle) could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

Operating AWD Vehicles With Mismatched Tires

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

WARNINGS

The use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles (for example, 17 inch low profile tires on the front axle and 22 inch high profile tires on the rear axle) could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front-wheel drive or damage the AWD system. However, the AWD system is capable of tolerating any combination of new and worn tires of the same original tire size. For example, using 3 worn tread tires and 1 new tread tire all of the same original tire size, can be tolerated by the AWD system.

Driving In Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive (AWD)

AWD vehicles are equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Lower gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Basic operating principles in special conditions

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

If Your Vehicle Goes Off the Edge of the Pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

WARNINGS

Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

Emergency Maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle (that is, turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (that is, from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

Sand

Most of the time traction control improves tire traction by managing wheel slip through Brake, Engine, and AWD calibrations. However, during low speed driving, disabling traction control in deep sand can help keep the wheels moving to maintain vehicle momentum.

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could cause the AWD system to overheat and default to front-wheel drive. If this occurs, an ***AWD OFF*** message displays in the information display. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe location and stop the engine for at least 10 minutes. After the engine has been restarted and the AWD

system has adequately cooled, the ***AWD OFF*** message turns off and normal AWD function returns. In the event the engine is not stopped, the ***AWD OFF*** message turns off when the system cools and normal AWD function returns.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use L (Low) gear when possible. L (Low) gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and Water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.*

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, have the power transfer unit (PTU) or rear axle serviced by an authorized dealer.

E143950

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”

Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain

Note: *Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

E143949

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

Driving on Snow and Ice

WARNING

If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

Note: *Excessive tire slippage can cause driveline damage.*

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won’t stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel (ABS), do not “pump” the brakes. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 175).

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lowering kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to off-highway usage.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Wheels*** *(page 270).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 94).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.

If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the transmission is locked in park (P). Failure to set the parking brake and engage park could result in vehicle roll-away, property damage or bodily injury.

To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down to its fullest extent. The brake warning lamp in the instrument cluster will illuminate and remains illuminated until the parking brake is released.

To release the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down again.

If you are parking your vehicle on a grade or with a trailer, press and hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake. There may be a little vehicle movement as the parking brake sets to hold the vehicle's weight. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. If needed, press and hold the service brake pedal down, then try reapplying the parking brake. Chock the wheels if required. If the parking brake cannot hold the weight of the vehicle, the parking brake may need to be serviced or the vehicle may be overloaded.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING

The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 99).

Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

System Indicator Lights and Messages

The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.

The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

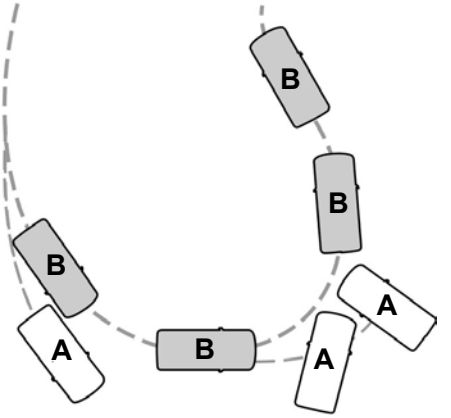
Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 177).



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control and roll stability control systems off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the systems deactivate.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 177).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *The sensing system cannot be turned off when a MyKey is present. See* ***Principle of Operation*** *(page 57).*

Note: *If you attach certain add-on devices such as a trailer or bike rack, the rear sensing system may detect that add-on device and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that you disable the rear sensing system when you attach an add-on device to your vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See **General Information** (page 99).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 107).

REAR PARKING AID

The rear sensors are only active when the transmission is in reverse (R). As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects a stationary or receding object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the warning sounds again.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There may be decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away from the bumper.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

Active park assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the systems accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

Active Park Assist is an electric parking aid that uses ultrasonic sensors. The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park your vehicle.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck). If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system.

The system may not operate correctly in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire significantly worn more than the other tires.
- One or more tires are improperly inflated.
- You try to park on a tight curve.

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a bike rack, trailer or other object near the sensors on the front or rear of your vehicle.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- The front bumper or side sensors are damaged or obstructed (front bumper cover).
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle (for example, a mini-spare tire).

Using Active Park Assist

Press the button to turn the system on or off.

When driving at a speed less than 22 mph (35 km/h), the system automatically scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left hand side or right hand side of your vehicle. If the direction indicator is not used, the system defaults to the passenger side of your vehicle.

E130107

When the system finds a suitable space it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the display screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You can also activate the system after you have already driven partially or completely past the parking space. To do so, press the active park assist button and the system will inform you if you have recently past a suitable parking space.*

Note: *You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.*

Note: *Active park assist may not detect vehicles with overhanging loads (a bus or a truck), street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.*

Note: *You should drive your vehicle within 5 ft (1.5 m) and as parallel to the other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.*

Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).*

Note: *If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the display screen shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.*

E130108

When you think your vehicle has enough space in front and behind it, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a touchscreen display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a chime sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: *If vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input is detected), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

Note: *If a maneuver is interrupted before completion, the system switches off. The steering wheel position will not indicate the actualy position of the steering and you have to take full control of your vehicle.*

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button during an active maneuver.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.
- Something touches the steering wheel.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message is displayed, followed by a chime. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off.
The transmission is in reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space.

The system does not offer a particular space
The sensors may be covered (for example, snow, ice or dirt buildup). Covered sensors can affect the system's functionality
There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
The parking space is farther than 5 ft (1.5 m) or closer than 16 in (40 cm) away.
Your vehicle is going faster than 22 mph (35 km/h).
You may have recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After a battery disconnect, the vehicle must be driven on a straight road at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h) for up to 30 seconds.

The system does not position your vehicle where I want in the space
Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward when reverse [R] is selected).
An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.
Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.
Your vehicle was pulled too far past the parking space.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

The system does not position your vehicle where I want in the space
The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).
A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.
A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow, moving truck bed, etc).
The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.
The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Reverse your vehicle as slow as possible, higher speeds may limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Some vehicles may not come equipped with guidelines.

Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle. During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines (if equipped): Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

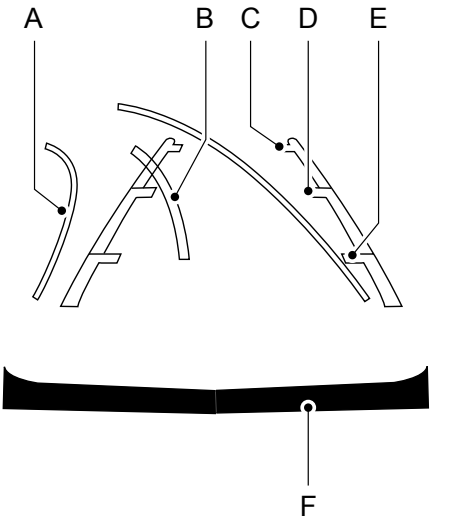
Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Active Guidelines (If Equipped)

Note: *Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines while your vehicle is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A	Active guideline
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

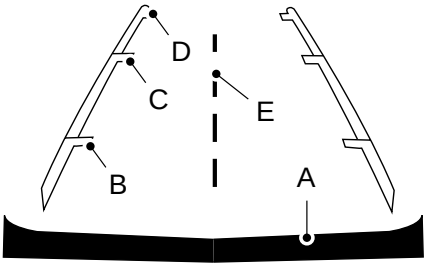
To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Fixed Guidelines

Note: *Fixed guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *The centerline is only available if fixed guidelines are on.*



E163914

A	Rear bumper
B	Fixed guideline: Red Zone
C	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
D	Fixed guideline: Green zone
E	Centerline

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Manual zoom allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed through the display screen. See **Settings** (page 410).

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot (If Equipped)

The system provides an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones in the display screen. The zones highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

Rear Camera Delay

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

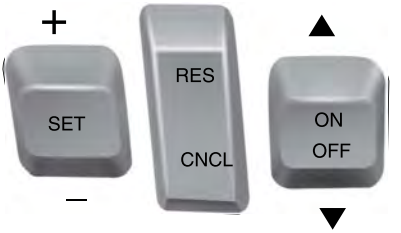
USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.*



E173610

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.

The indicator appears in the information display.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+***.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator will change color.*

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select kph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 2 kph increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display, the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release ***CNCL*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release ***RES***.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Adaptive cruise control may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

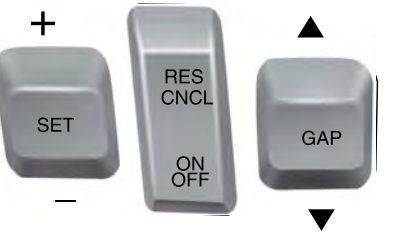
Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

WARNINGS

Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes. The auto-brake component of the adaptive cruise control system does not operate the trailer brakes. Using adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer that has trailer brakes may result in the loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.



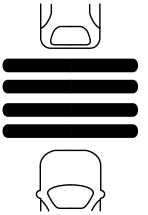
E173611

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.

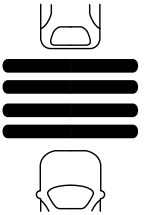
The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



E164805

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+*** or **SET-**.
3. A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E164805

5. A vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.*

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS

When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance.

A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

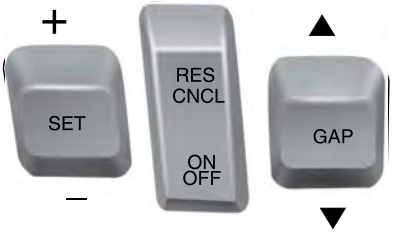
- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- Your vehicle speed falls below 12 mph (20 km/h).
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The brake lamps automatically turn on when the system applies the brakes. The maximum braking which the system applies is limited. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. A red warning bar displays on the windshield and you must take immediate action.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

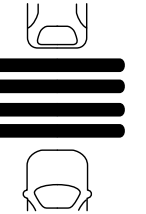
Setting the Gap Distance



E173611

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*



E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the graphic. You can select four gap settings.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance automatically adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Adaptive cruise control gap settings

Set speed mph (km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Gap yd (m)	Dynamic behavior
62 (100)	1	1	31 (28)	Sport
62 (100)	2	1.4	43 (39)	Normal
62 (100)	3	1.8	55 (50)	Normal
62 (100)	4	2.2	67 (61)	Comfort

Each time you switch the system on, the system selects the last chosen gap.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release ***CNCL*** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Overriding the System

WARNING

If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

You can override the set speed and gap by pressing the accelerator pedal.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the lead vehicle graphic does not show in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed changes in approximately 5 mph (10 km/h) increments.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release ***RES***. Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Automatic Cancellation

The system does not operate below 12 mph (20 km/h). An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: *A message is shown in the display if the engine speed drops too low.*

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear position when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.

Note: *An audible warning sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool down. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled down.*

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

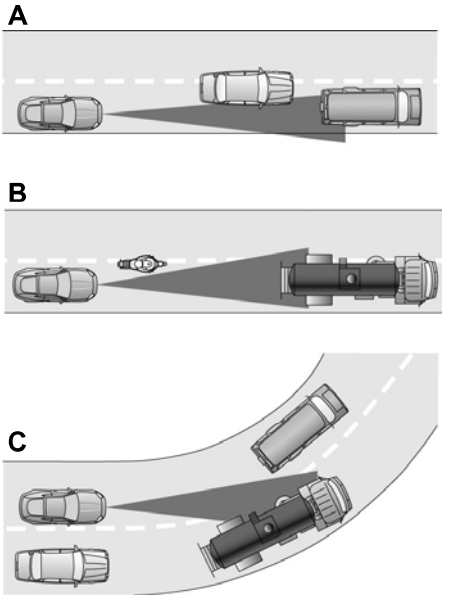
Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Detection Issues

WARNING

On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.

B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.

C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam does not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor

E145632

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is located on the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something obstructs the radar signals.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
You are in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles and no roadside objects.	Wait a short time or switch to normal cruise control.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. This can happen, for example, when driving in sparse rural environments. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING

Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

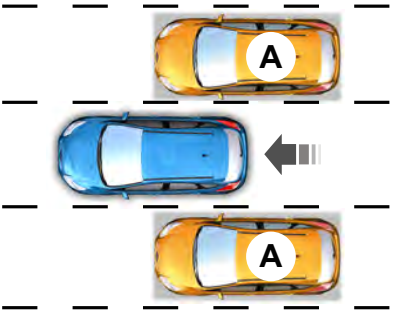
You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNING

Never use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System is designed to aid you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 ft (3 m) beyond the bumper. The system is designed to alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees). It's only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind spot zones.*

Note: *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind spot zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.*

Using the System

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 3 mph (5 km/h).

For automatic transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System remains on while the transmission is in drive (D). If shifted into reverse (R) or park (P) the Blind Spot Information System turns off. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 3 mph (5 km/h).

For manual transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System is on for all gears except the reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P).*

System Lights and Messages

E142442

The Blind Spot Information System illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from.

The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.

System Sensor Blockage

E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Any dirt, mud and snow in front of the sensors and/or driving in heavy rain can cause system degradation. Also, other types of obstructions in front of the sensor can cause system degradation. This is referred to as a 'blocked' condition.

Note: *Do not apply bumper stickers and/or repair compound to these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.*

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor will appear in the information display. Also the system alert indicators will remain ON and the system will no longer provide any vehicle warnings. You can clear the information display warning but the alert indicators will remain illuminated.

A "blocked" condition can be cleared in two ways:

- After the blockage in front of the sensors is removed or the rainfall/snowfall rate decreases or stops, drive for a few minutes in traffic to allow the sensors to detect passing vehicles.
- By cycling the ignition from ON to OFF and then back ON.

Note: *When towing a trailer, the sensors may detect the trailer thus causing a false alert. It may be desirable to turn the Blind Spot Information System off if the false alerts become annoying.*

System Errors

If the system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the telltale will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 107).

System Limitations

The system does have its limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor may limit vehicle detection.

The following are other situations that may limit the system:

- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very fast rates.
- When several vehicles forming a convoy pass through the blind zone.

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the Blind Spot Information System off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 99). When the Blind Spot Information System switches off, you will not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message. The telltale in the cluster also illuminates. When you switch the Blind Spot Information System on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The system switches back on every time you start your vehicle.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

You can also have the Blind Spot Information System switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT (If Equipped)

WARNING

Never use the Cross Traffic Alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. Cross Traffic Alert is not a replacement for careful driving.

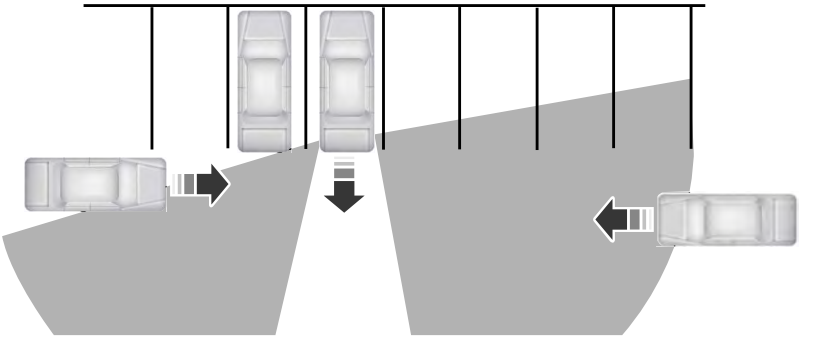
Cross Traffic Alert is designed to warn you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Using the System

Cross Traffic Alert turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). Once shifted out of reverse (R), Cross Traffic Alert turns off.

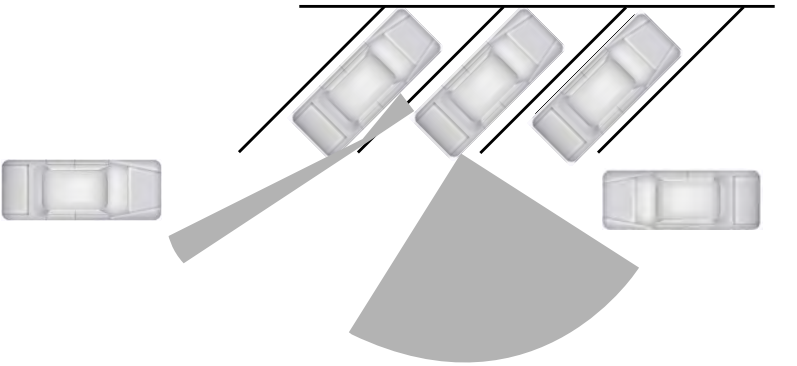
Note: *Cross Traffic Alert only functions while your transmission is in reverse (R).*

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to alert the driver of certain collision risks. Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage to the right is nearly maximized.



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts

E142442

The Cross Traffic Alert illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. Cross Traffic Alert also sounds an audible alert and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 180).

E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance. See **Blind Spot**

Information System (page 195). If the Blind Spot Information System is blocked, Cross Traffic Alert is also blocked. A corresponding message appears in the information display as soon as you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

System Limitations

Cross Traffic Alert has its limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

The system detects approaching vehicles from up to 45 ft (14 m) away, though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert performance:

- Stationary or slow moving vehicles.
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lame.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Debris build-up near or around the sensor(s).
- Small distance to the vehicle ahead.
- Adjacently parking vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

If the rear end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, the radar sensing zone may be altered causing missed or false collision warnings. See your authorized dealer to have your collision warning radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

False Alerts

Note: *When towing a trailer, the sensors may detect the trailer thus causing a false alert. It may be desirable to turn the Blind Spot Information System off if the false alerts become annoying.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by the Cross Traffic Alert system that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

System Errors

If Cross Traffic Alert senses a problem with the left or right sensor a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 107).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch Cross Traffic Alert off in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 107). When you switch Cross Traffic Alert off, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message.

Note: *The Cross Traffic Alert switches on whenever the ignition is switched on and ready to provide appropriate alerts when the transmission is in reverse (R). Cross Traffic Alert will not remember the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have Cross Traffic Alert switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*

Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM

(If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

This system is designed to be a supplementary driving aid. It is not intended to replace the driver's attention, and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT activate the brakes automatically. Failure to press the brake pedal to activate the brakes may result in a collision.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

WARNINGS

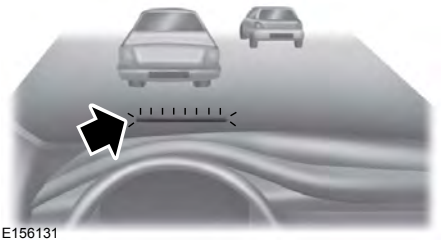
The collision warning system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain distance and speed.

Note: *The system does not detect, warn or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of the vehicle.*

Note: *The collision warning system is active at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).*

E156130

This system is designed to alert the driver of certain collision risks. A radar detects if your vehicle is rapidly approaching another vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours.



E156131

If it is, a red warning light illuminates and an audible warning chime sounds.

The brake support system assists the driver in reducing the collision speed by charging the brakes. If the risk of collision further increases after the warning light illuminates, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. This may be apparent to the driver. The system does not automatically activate the brakes but, if the brake pedal is pressed, full force braking is applied even if the brake pedal is lightly pressed.

Using the Collision Warning System

WARNING

The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs if the driver applies the vehicle's brakes. The brake pedal must be pressed just like any typical braking situation.

The warning system sensitivity can be adjusted to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 99).

Note: *If collision warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning sensitivity can be reduced, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.* *See **General Information** (page 99).*

Blocked Sensors

E145632

If a message regarding a blocked sensor appears in the information display, the radar signals from the sensor have been obstructed. The sensors are located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. When the sensors are obstructed, a vehicle ahead cannot be detected and the collision warning system does not function. The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message being displayed.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is no longer obstructed
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Collision warning should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Collision warning should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve

System Limitations

WARNING

The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs if the driver applies the vehicle's brakes. The brake pedal must be pressed just like any typical braking situation.

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles do not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary vehicles or vehicles moving below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see blocked sensor section).
- Debris build-up on the grille near the headlamps (see blocked sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Steering wheel and pedal movements are large (very active driving style).

If the front end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, the radar sensing zone may be altered causing missed or false collision warnings. See your authorized dealer to have your collision warning radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

CARGO NETS (If Equipped)

WARNING

This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

E210596

The cargo net secures lightweight objects in the cargo area. Attach the net to the provided anchors. Do not put more than 50 lb (22 kg) in the net.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNING

When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is 100 lb (45 kg).

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

LOAD LIMIT

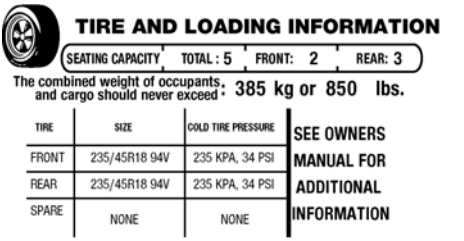
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:



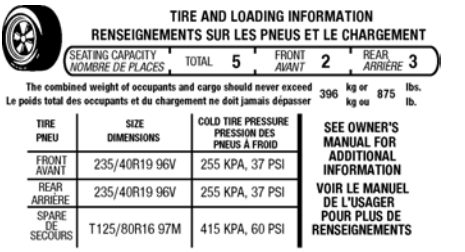
TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL : 5 | FRONT: 2 | REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 385 kg or 850 lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI
SPARE	NONE	NONE

SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION
RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY / *NOMBRE DE PLACES* | TOTAL 5 | FRONT / *AVANT* 2 | REAR / *ARRIÈRE* 3

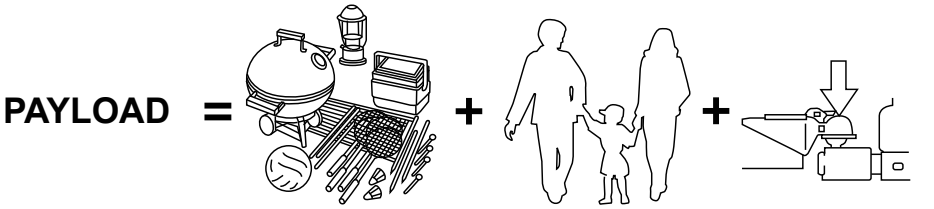
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 396 kg or lbs.
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 875 kg ou lb.

TIRE / PNEU	SIZE / DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE / PRESSION DES PNEUS À FROID
FRONT / AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
REAR / ARRIÈRE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI
SPARE / DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI

SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS

E198719

Payload



E143816

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb” for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

WARNING

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

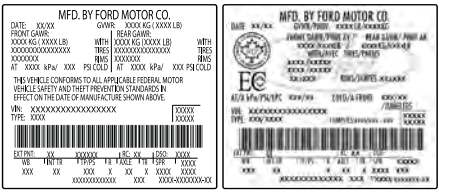
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



E198828

WARNING

Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.

Note: *For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.*

WARNINGS

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

- 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles

WARNING

When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: *Your vehicle may have electrical items, such as fuses or relays, related to towing. See* ***Fuses*** *(page 233).*

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these components periodically during, and after, any towing operation.

Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.
- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight. Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 203).

You can also find information in the **RV & Trailer Towing Guide** available at your authorized dealer, or online.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

RV & Trailer Towing Guide Online	
Website	http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

WARNING

Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it when it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 107). Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 203).

You can switch this feature off in the information display. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: *Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.*

Note: *Make sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area. Do not exceed 20 feet² (1.86 meters²) if your vehicle can tow a class I trailer or 40 feet² (3.72 meters²) if your vehicle can tow a class III trailer.*

Note: *For high altitude operation, reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1000 feet (300 meters) starting at the 1000 foot (300 meter) elevation point.*

Note: *Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to use electric trailer brakes.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Powertrain and trailer class	Maximum GCWR	Maximum trailer weight
3.5L TiVCT front-wheel drive, Class I	6,900 lb (3,131 kg)	2,000 lb (907 kg)
3.5L TiVCT all-wheel drive, Class I	7,050 lb (3,199 kg)	2,000 lb (907 kg)
3.5L GTDi all-wheel drive, Class I	7,072 lb (3,208 kg)	2,000 lb (907 kg)
3.5L TiVCT front-wheel drive, Class III	9,357 lb (4,244.3 kg)	4,500 lb (2,042 kg) *
3.5L TiVCT all-wheel drive, Class III	9,521 lb (4,318.6 kg)	4,500 lb (2,042 kg) **
3.5L GTDi all-wheel drive, Class III	9,622 lb (4,364.4 kg)	4,500 lb (2,042 kg) **

* For towing trailers up to 3500 pounds (1588 kilograms), use a weight-carrying hitch and ball, which uniformly spreads the trailer tongue loads through your vehicle’s underbody structure. For towing trailers over 3500 pounds (1588 kilograms), up to 4500 pounds (2042 kilograms), we recommend you use a weight-distributing hitch to increase front axle load while towing.

**For towing trailers up to 4500 pounds (2042 kilograms), use a weight-carrying hitch and ball, which uniformly spreads the trailer tongue loads through your vehicle's underbody structure.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

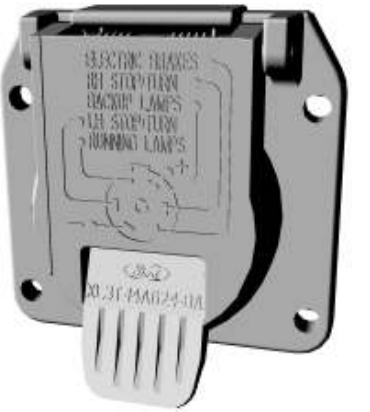
Follow these guidelines for safe towing:

- Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).
- Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.
- See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information.
- If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See **Load Limit** (page 203).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Trailer Towing Connector (Vehicles with a Trailer Towing Package and 7–Pin Connector)



E211391

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions. Some seven-position connectors may have the SAE J2863 logo, which confirms that it is the proper wiring connector and works correctly with your vehicle.

Color	Function
Yellow	Left turn signal and stop lamp
White	Ground (-)
Blue	Electric brakes
Green	Right turn signal and stop lamp
Orange	Battery (+)
Brown	Running lights
Grey	Reverse lights

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Weight-Distributing Hitch

WARNING

Do not adjust a weight-distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

When hooking-up a trailer using a weight-distributing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park your vehicle, without the trailer, on a level surface.
2. Measure the height of the top of your vehicle’s front wheel opening on the fender. This is H1.
3. Attach the trailer to your vehicle without the weight-distributing bars connected.
4. Measure the height of the top of your vehicle’s front wheel opening on the fender a second time. This is H2.
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars so that the height of the front fender is approximately halfway between H1 and H2.
6. Check that the trailer is level. If not level, adjust the ball height accordingly and repeat Steps 3–6.

Safety Chains

Note: *Never attach safety chains to the bumper.*

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

WARNING

Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

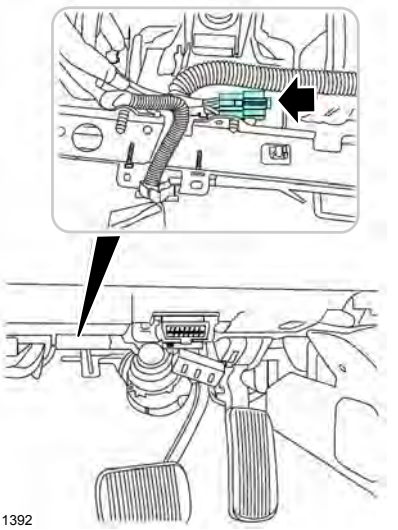
The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Separate functioning brake systems are required for safe control of towed vehicles and trailers weighing more than 1500 pounds (680 kilograms) when loaded.

Trailer Brake Controller Connector

(If Equipped)

The connector is located under the instrument panel above the brake pedal.



Trailer Lamps

WARNING

Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

When Towing a Trailer

- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 kilometers).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 miles (80 kilometers).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the gearshift in position **P** to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Avoid parking on a grade. However, if you must park on a grade:

1. Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.
2. Set your vehicle parking brake.
3. Place the automatic transmission in position **P**.
4. Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. (Chocks not included with vehicle.)

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: *Disconnect the wiring to the trailer **before** backing the trailer into the water.*

Note: *Reconnect the wiring to the trailer **after** removing the trailer from the water.*

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 centimeters) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- Causing internal damage to the components.
- Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Any time the rear axle submerges in water, replace the rear axle lubricant. Water may contaminate the rear axle lubricant, which is not a normal maintenance inspection item unless there is a possibility of a leak or other axle repair is required.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle becomes inoperable (without access to wheel dollies or vehicle transport trailer), it can be flat-towed (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Shift into neutral (N). If you cannot shift into neutral (N), you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 164).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 116).*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. We designed these guidelines to prevent damage to your transmission.

You can tow your 3.5L EcoBoost or 3.5L Duratec equipped vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.

If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground:

- Tow only in the forward direction.
- Release the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal, and then pressing the keyless start button until the vehicle starts.
2. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift into neutral (N).
3. Turn the vehicle off by pressing the keyless start button once.
4. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. You need the door key to lock and unlock doors when the battery cable is disconnected. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 256).

Note: *The anti-theft system does not work until you reconnect the battery cable.*

Start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal, and then turning the ignition key until the vehicle starts.
2. Press the brake pedal and shift the transmission into neutral (N).
3. Turn off your vehicle by turning the ignition key past the accessory position. The key position is between the accessory and off positions. See **Ignition Switch** (page 149).
4. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 256).

Note: *The anti-theft system does not work until you reconnect the battery cable.*

Start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable.

All Vehicles

- Do not exceed 65 mph (105 km/h).
- Start the engine and allow it to run for five minutes at the beginning of each day and every six hours thereafter. With the engine running and your foot on the brake, shift into drive (D) and then into reverse (R) before shifting back into neutral (N).

Front-wheel Drive Vehicles

Alternatively, you can tow your front-wheel drive vehicle with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly, or with all four wheels off the ground using a vehicle transport trailer. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

All-wheel Drive Vehicles

Alternatively, you can tow your all-wheel drive vehicle with all four wheels off the ground using a vehicle transport trailer. Do not tow your all-wheel drive vehicle with the front wheels off the ground (by using a tow dolly) and the rear wheels on the ground. This causes damage to your all-wheel drive system. If you are using a vehicle transport trailer, follow the instruction specified by the equipment provider.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 mi (480 km). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Your fuel economy is affected by several things, such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under, and how you maintain your vehicle.

You may improve your fuel economy by keeping these things in mind:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds without stopping.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Avoid these actions; they reduce your fuel economy:

- Sudden accelerations or hard accelerations.
- Revving the engine before turning it off.
- Idle for periods longer than one minute.
- Warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Use the air conditioner or front defroster.
- Use the speed control in hilly terrain.
- Rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Drive a heavily loaded vehicle or tow a trailer.
- Carry unnecessary weight (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kilogram] of weight carried).
- Driving with the wheels out of alignment.

Conditions

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars, light bars, running boards, ski racks or luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- To maximize the fuel economy, drive with the tonneau cover installed (if equipped).
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 kilometers) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.

- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

WARNINGS

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.

E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare, if provided with the vehicle (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (7.6 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.5 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to $200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

For complete program coverage details you may contact your dealer, you can call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING

Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle.

Note: *Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.*

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNINGS

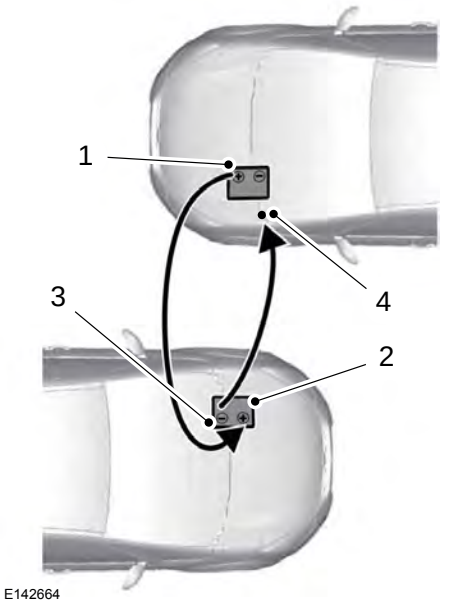
Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables.

Do not attach the end of the positive cable to the studs or L-shaped eyelet located above the positive (+) terminal of your vehicle's battery. High current may flow through and cause damage to the fuses.

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing



E142664

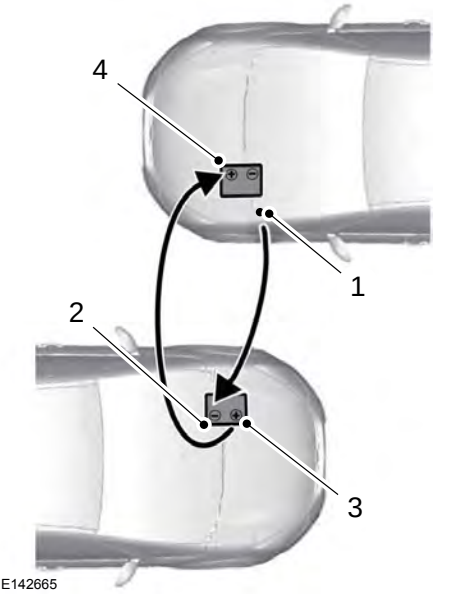
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) cable to a ground connection point if available.

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.

2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

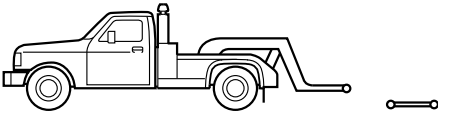
POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

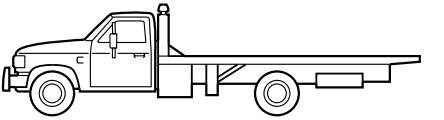
The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

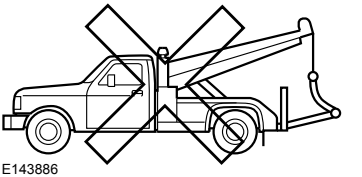
The horn and indicators will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing an all-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel or four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
www.owner.ford.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Website
www.ford.ca

Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico , Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY

Customer Relationship Centers in:

Customer Relationship Center	Phone	Fax	E-mail
Asia Pacific	N/A	N/A	apemcrc@ford.com
Caribbean and Central America	+1 313 594 4857	-	expcac@ford.com
Ford Middle East	FORD 80004443673	971 4 3327 266	menacac@ford.com
	Lincoln 80004441067		
	UAE 80004441066		
	Saudi Arabia 8008443673		
	Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078		
Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands	+1-800-841-3673	N/A	prcac@ford.com
Sub-Saharan Africa	+1-313-594-4857	+1 313 390 0804	expcac@ford.com
South Korea	+63-2-717-6410	N/A	infokr1@ford.com or infokr@lincoln.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing, expcso@ford.com.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm (English)
Website	www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm (French)
Phone	1–800–333–0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.ford.ca
Phone	1–800–565-3673

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

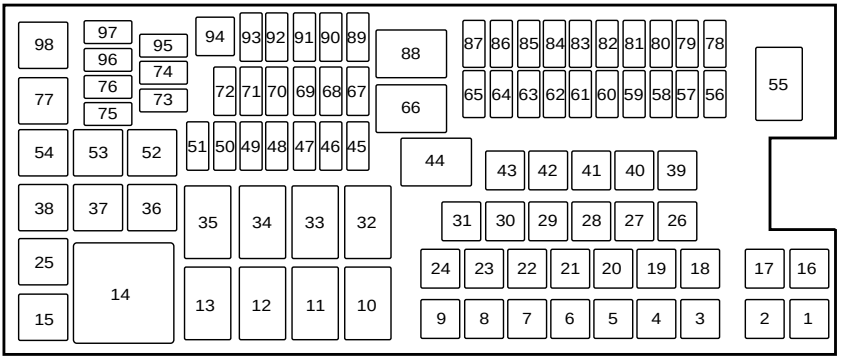
WARNINGS

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect the vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you will need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 256).



E173618

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	40A[1]	Fan relay 2.
2	40A[1]	Fan relay 1.
3	30A[1]	Trailer brake control module.
4	30A[1]	Wipers. Washer pump.
5	50A[1]	Anti-lock brake system pump.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
6	20A[1]	Center console power point.
7	30A[1]	Power liftgate.
8	20A[1]	Moonroof.
9	20A[1]	Second row console power point.
10	Relay	Third row power seats relay.
11	Relay	Heated rear window relay.
12	Relay	Trailer tow battery charge relay.
13	Relay	Starter motor relay.
14	Relay	Cooling fan number 2 relay.
15	Relay	Fuel pump relay.
16	-	Not used.
17	30A[1]	110V AC power point.
18	40A[1]	Front blower motor relay.
19	30A[1]	Starter relay.
20	20A[1]	Storage bin power point.
21	20A[1]	Instrument panel power point / cigar lighter.
22	30A[1]	Third row seat module.
23	30A[1]	Driver power seat. Memory module.
24	30A[1]	Trailer tow battery charge.
25	-	Not used.
26	40A[1]	Rear window defroster. Heated mirrors.
27	20A[1]	Cargo power point.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
28	30A[1]	Front climate controlled seats.
29	20A[1]	Front heated seats.
30	20A[1]	Rear heated seats.
31	25A[1]	Electric fan relay 3.
32	Relay	Auxiliary blower motor relay.
33	Relay	Cooling fan #1 relay.
34	Relay	Front blower motor relay.
35	Relay	Cooling fan (series) relay.
36	-	Not used.
37	Relay	Trailer tow right-hand stop/turn lamps relay.
38	Relay	Trailer tow reverse lamps relay.
39	30A[1]	Auxiliary blower motor.
40	-	Not used.
41	-	Not used.
42	30A[1]	Passenger power seat.
43	20A[1]	Anti-lock brake system valves.
44	Relay	Windshield washer relay.
45	5A[2]	Rain sensor.
46	5A[2]	Canister vent solenoid (EcoBoost engines).
47	15A[2]	Washer pump.
48	10A[2]	Front park lamps.
49	-	Not used.
50	10A[2]	Heated mirrors.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
51	5A[2]	Powertrain control module — Injector power monitor (non-EcoBoost engines).
52	-	Not used.
53	Relay	Trailer tow left-hand stop/turn lamps relay.
54	-	Not used.
55	Relay	Wiper relay.
56	30A[2]	Fuel injectors. Fuel pump relay.
57	20A[2]	Left-hand high intensity discharge head-lamp.
58	10A[2]	Alternator sensor.
59	10A[2]	Brake on/off switch.
60	10A[2]	Trailer tow back-up lamps.
61	-	Not used.
62	10A[2]	A/C clutch relay.
63	15A[2]	Trailer tow stop/turn lamps.
64	15A[2]	Rear wipers.
65	-	Not used.
66	Relay	Powertrain control module – vehicle power relay.
67	20A[2]	Vehicle power #2 – oxygen sensor heater. Mass airflow sensor. Variable camshaft timing solenoid valve. Canister vent solenoid. Canister purge solenoid.
68	20A[2]	Vehicle power #4 (ignition coils).
69	20A[2]	Vehicle power 1 (powertrain control module).

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
70	15A[2]	Vehicle power #3 (coil) – A/C clutch relay. Fan control relay coils 1-3. Variable air conditioning compressor. Auxiliary transmission warmup. Turbo charge waste-gate control. Electronic compressor bypass valve. All-wheel drive module. Positive crankcase ventilation heater.
71	-	Not used.
72	-	Not used.
73	-	Not used.
74	-	Not used.
75	-	Not used.
76	-	Not used.
77	Relay	Trailer tow park lamps relay.
78	20A[2]	Right high-intensity discharge headlamp.
79	10A[2]	Adaptive cruise control module.
80	-	Not used.
81	-	Not used.
82	15A[2]	Rear washer.
83	-	Not used.
84	20A[2]	Trailer tow park lamps.
85	-	Not used.
86	5A[2]	Powertrain control module. Keep alive power and relay. Powertrain control module relay. Canister vent solenoid (non-EcoBoost engines).
87	5A	Run/start relay.
88	Relay	Run/start relay.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
89	10A[2]	Anti–lock brake system module.
90	10A[2]	Powertrain control module run/start.
91	10A[2]	Adaptive cruise control module.
92	5A[2]	Front blower relay coil. Power steering module.
93	5A[2]	Auxiliary blower motor. Rear window defroster relay. Battery charge relay.
94	30A[1]	Body control module run/start.
95	5A[2]	Front passenger window switch.
96	-	Not used.
97	-	Not used.
98	Relay	A/C clutch relay.

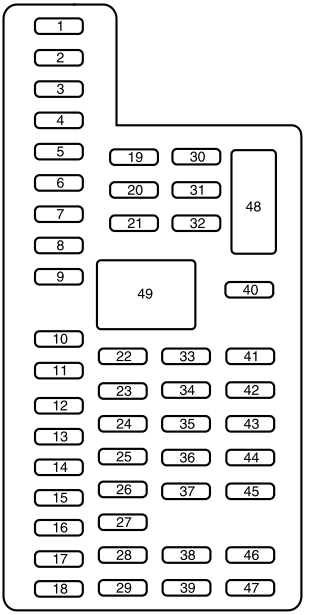
[1] J Case Low Profile fuse.

[2] Mini fuse.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. You may need to remove a trim panel to access it.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing



E163102

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	30A	Passenger side rear window.
2	15A	Memory seat. Second row seats.
3	30A	Passenger side front window.
4	10A	Demand lamps battery saver relay.
5	20A	Audio amplifier Active noise control module.
6	5A	Not used (spare).
7	7.5A	Driver seat module logic. Left front door zone module. Keypad.
8	10A	Power liftgate.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
9	10A	SYNC module. Electronic finish panel. Radio frequency transceiver module.
10	10A	Run accessory relay. Front wiper motor relay.
11	10A	Intelligent access module logic. Heads-up display.
12	15A	Puddle lamp. Backlighting LED. Interior lighting.
13	15A	Right-hand direction indicators.
14	15A	Left-hand direction indicators.
15	15A	Center high mounted stop lamp. Backup lamp.
16	10A	Right low beam headlamp.
17	10A	Left low beam headlamp.
18	10A	Third row power seats. Start button. Keypad illumination. Brake-shift interlock. Powertrain control module wake-up. Anti-theft system.
19	20A	Not used (spare).
20	20A	Locks.
21	10A	Extended power module.
22	20A	Horn relay.
23	15A	Steering wheel control module logic. Instrument cluster.
24	15A	Steering wheel control module. Datalink.
25	15A	Liftgate release.
26	5A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
27	20A	Intelligent access module power.
28	15A	Not used (spare).
29	20A	Radio. Global positioning system module.
30	15A	Front park lamps. Trailer tow relay for park lamps. Front side markers.
31	5A	Trailer tow brake controller.
32	15A	Smart window motors. Master window and mirror switch. Lock switch illumination. Moonroof. 110V AC power point. Interior rearview mirror.
33	10A	Not used (spare).
34	10A	Reverse park aid module. Rear heated seat module. Blind spot monitor module. Rear video camera. Interior mirror.
35	5A	Climate control humidity sensor. Heads-up display.
36	10A	Heated steering wheel.
37	10A	Refrigerator.
38	10A	Front passenger window switch.
39	15A	High beams.
40	10A	Rear park lamps. License plate lamps.
41	7.5A	Extended power module.
42	5A	Not used (spare).
43	10A	Not used (spare).
44	10A	Not used (spare).
45	5A	Not used (spare).

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
46	10A	Climate control module.
47	15A	Fog lamp relay. Front direction indicators.
48	30A Circuit breaker	Front passenger power window. Rear power windows.
49	Relay	Delayed accessory relay. Body control module.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

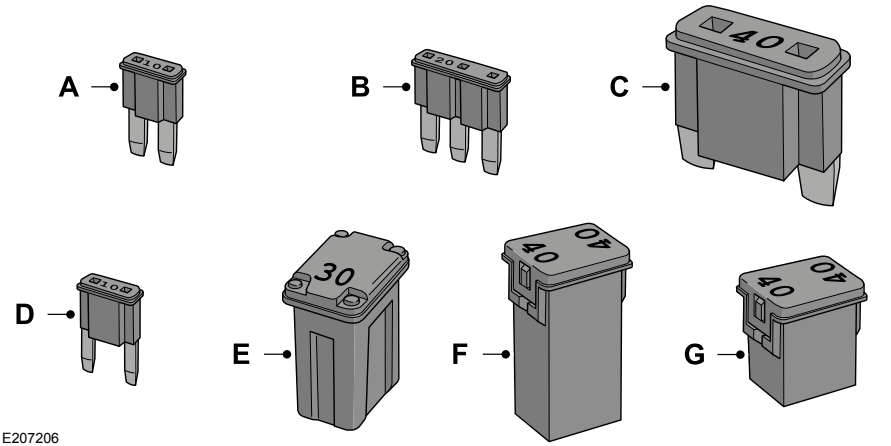
WARNING

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuse Types



Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

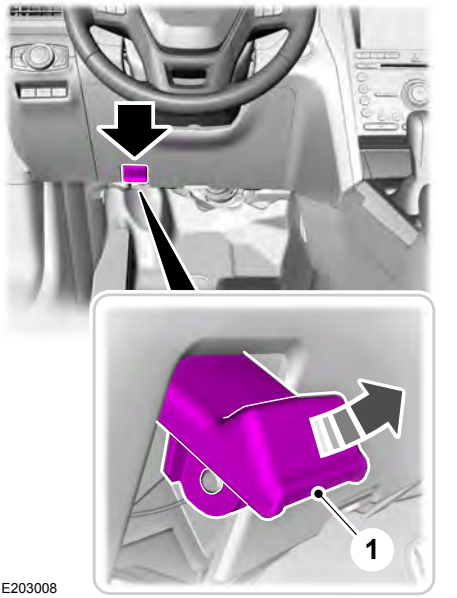
WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

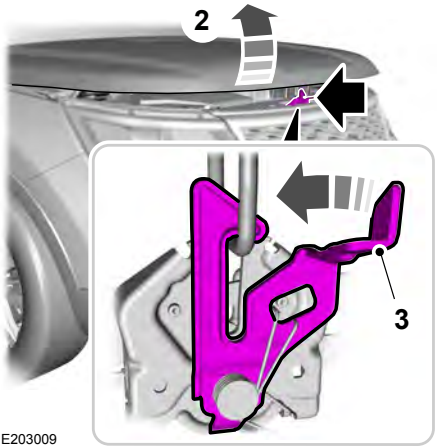
OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



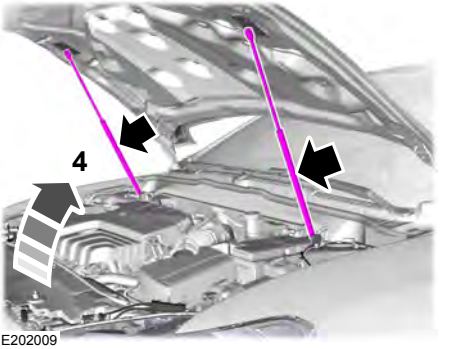
E203008

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.



E203009

3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.



E202009

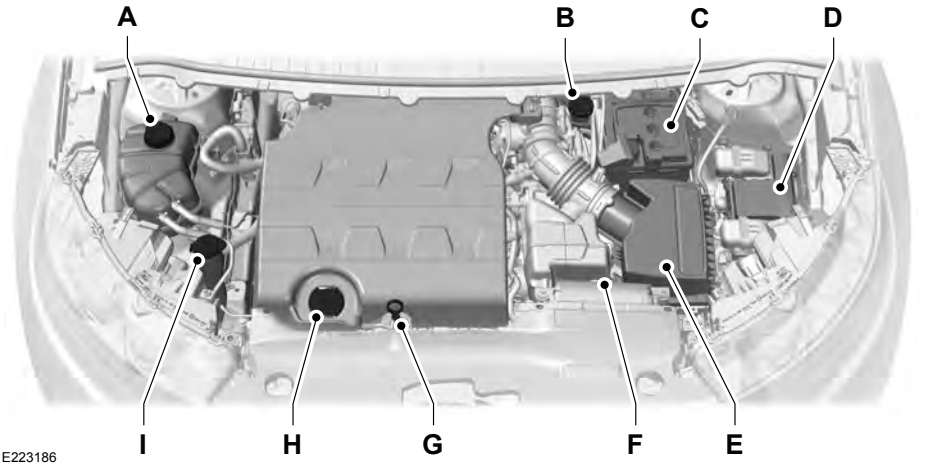
4. Open the hood. The hood struts automatically support the hood.

Closing the Hood

1. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8–12 in (20–30 cm).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.5L DURATEC



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 250).

B Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 255).

C Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 256).

D Engine compartment fusebox. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 233).

E Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 265).

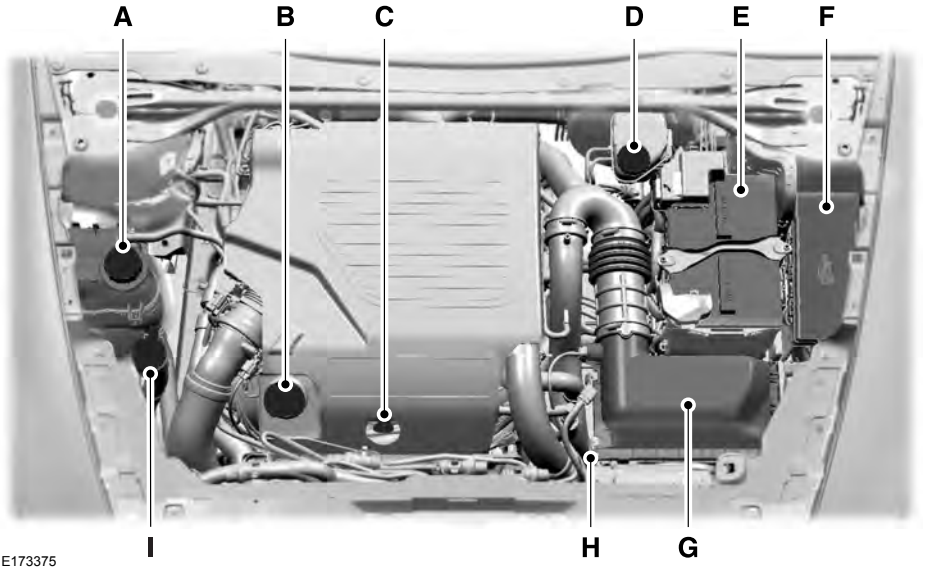
F Automatic transmission fluid dipstick. See **Automatic Transmission Fluid Check** (page 254).

G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 248).

H Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 248).

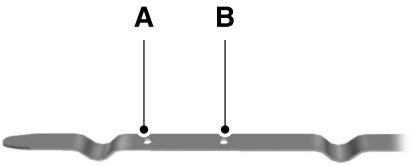
I Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 256).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.5L ECOBOOST™



A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 250).
B. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 248).
C. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 248).
D. Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 255).
E. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 256).
F. Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 233).
G. Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 265).
H. Automatic transmission dipstick. See **Automatic Transmission Fluid Check** (page 254).
I. Washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 256).

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



E146429

A MIN

B MAX

ENGINE OIL CHECK

To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately, do the following:

1. Make sure the parking brake is on. Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
3. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
4. Switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan. Checking the engine oil level too soon after you switch the engine off may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 244).
6. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 247).
7. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 248).
8. Make sure that the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 304).
9. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *Do not remove the dipstick when the engine is running.*

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,100 mi (5,000 km).*

Adding Engine Oil

WARNING

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 247). Turn it counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 304). You may have to use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
4. Recheck the oil level.
5. If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
6. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Make sure you install the oil filler cap correctly.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.

From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil Life	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to Reset	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message. Reset Successful
	When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%. Remaining Life {00}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process. Not Reset Reset Cancelled

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not put coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

Do not add coolant further than the ***MAX*** mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

Note: *Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to Ford specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate the coolant has degraded nor does it require the coolant to be drained, the system to be flushed, or the coolant to be replaced.*

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299).

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

WARNINGS

Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is running or hot.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.

2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. You can continue to drive your vehicle.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park **(P)**.
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. After several minutes, if the temperature does not drop, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

WARNING

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

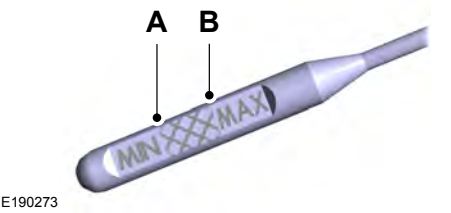
The transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips or shifts slowly you should check the fluid level. If you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Checking the Transmission Fluid Level

WARNING

The dipstick and surrounding components are hot. Use gloves when moving components and checking the transmission fluid level. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Only check the transmission fluid level when the engine is at normal operating temperature 179ºF (82ºC)-199ºF (93ºC). Normal operating temperature is reached after driving approximately 20 mi (30 km).



A Minimum.

B Maximum.

Note: *Check the fluid level with the engine running and the transmission in park (P).*

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Rotate the automatic transmission fluid cap in a counterclockwise direction. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 247).
3. Remove the cap and dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the cap and dipstick and remove it again to check the fluid level.
4. Make sure that the fluid level is between the MIN and the MAX marks. If the fluid level is at the MIN mark, add fluid immediately. See **Adding Transmission Fluid**.
5. Replace the automatic transmission fluid cap and dipstick. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Low Fluid Level

If the fluid level is within the minimum range (below point A) add the correct specification fluid to be within the hash mark area. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 304).

Note: *If the fluid level is below the minimum range do not drive your vehicle. A low fluid level can damage the transmission.*

Correct Fluid Level

If the fluid level is within the hash mark area (between points A and B) do not add any fluid.

High Fluid Level

If the fluid level is above the maximum range (above point B) fluid may need to be removed. High fluid levels may be caused by a overheating condition. If you have operated your vehicle at high speeds, towing a trailer or in city traffic during hot weather, allow your vehicle to cool for a minimum of 30 minutes before rechecking the level.

Note: *An overfill condition can damage the transmission.*

Adding Transmission Fluid*

1. Rotate the automatic transmission fluid cap in a counterclockwise direction.
2. Remove the cap and dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
3. Add fluid that meets the Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 304). Pour the fluid directly into the automatic transmission fluid cap and dipstick hole.
4. Replace the cap and dipstick and remove it again to check the fluid level.
5. Make sure that the fluid level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.
6. Replace the automatic transmission fluid cap and dipstick. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

*Vehicles With EcoBoost Engine

WARNING

Do not run the engine with the air filter disconnected.

1. Loosen the clamp holding the air filter assembly to the rubber hose.
2. Remove the air filter assembly securing bolts.
3. Lift the air filter assembly to disengage the locating pins.
4. Rotate the air filter assembly slightly in a counterclockwise direction.
5. Check the transmission fluid level.
6. Install the air filter assembly in reverse order. Tighten the air filter assembly securing bolts until you feel a strong resistance.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

A fluid level between the ***MAX*** and ***MIN*** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299).

POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

WARNING

If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40ºF (5ºC), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Note: *The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

WARNINGS

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Your vehicle has a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

Note: *If your vehicle's battery has a cover or shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

Note: *See an authorized dealer for low voltage battery access, testing, or replacement.*

When a low voltage battery replacement is necessary, see an authorized dealer to replace the low voltage battery with a Ford recommended replacement low voltage battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), do not allow a technician to connect any electrical device ground connection directly to the low voltage battery negative post. A connection at the low voltage battery negative post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If a person adds electrical or electronic accessories or components to the vehicle, the accessories or components may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Because your vehicle’s engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the low voltage battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. Some other computer settings, like the clock and radio station presets, are also maintained in memory by power from the low voltage battery. When a technician disconnects and connects the low voltage battery, these settings are erased. Complete the following procedure in order to restore the settings:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Switch off all accessories.
4. Fully press the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 313). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 88). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 313).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute. If the engine turns off, press the accelerator pedal to start the engine.

7. While the engine is running, press the brake pedal and shift into neutral (N).
8. Allow the engine to run for at least one minute by pressing on the accelerator pedal.
9. Drive the vehicle at least 12 mi (20 km) to completely relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.

Note: *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

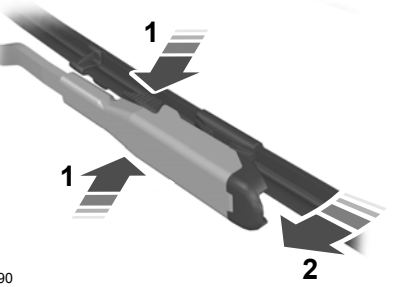
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

You can improve poor wiper quality by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

Front Wiper Blades



E129990

1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

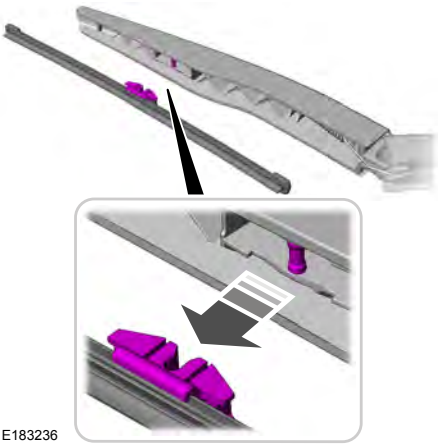
Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Rear Window Wiper Blade



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: *Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

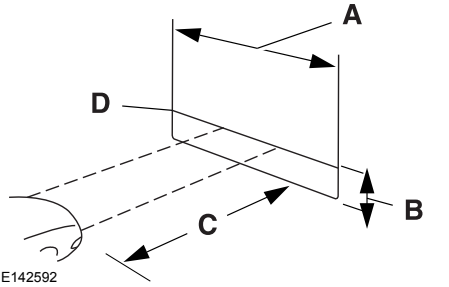
2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim

Headlamp Aim Target



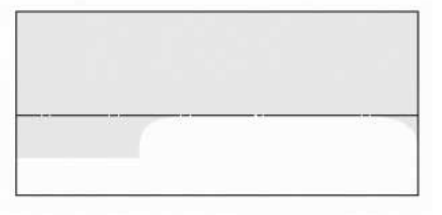
A	8 ft (2.4 m).
B	Center height of lamp to ground.
C	25 ft (7.6 m).
D	Horizontal reference line.

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

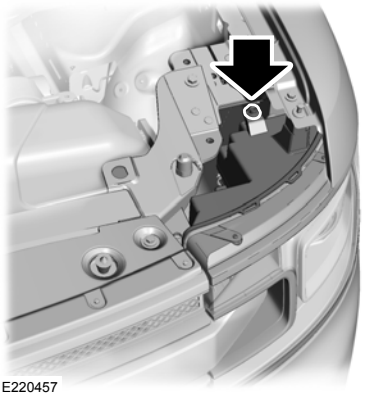
Note: *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.*

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 8 ft (2.4 m) long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



E142465

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the left-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 3 in (7.5 cm) below the horizontal reference line.



E220457

7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

Note: *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.*

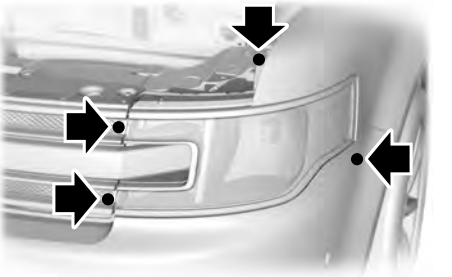
8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not adjustable on your vehicle.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

To gain access to the headlamp securing bolts and to remove the headlamp assembly, you must first remove the front fascia and front bumper assemblies. We recommend you see an authorized dealer.



E220458

CHANGING A BULB

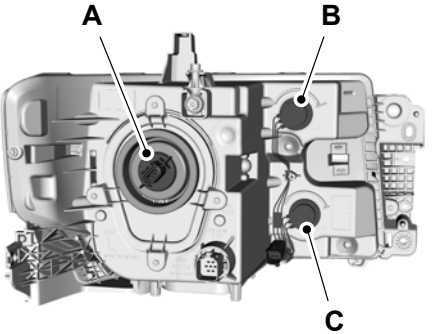
WARNINGS

Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury.

Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 263). Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

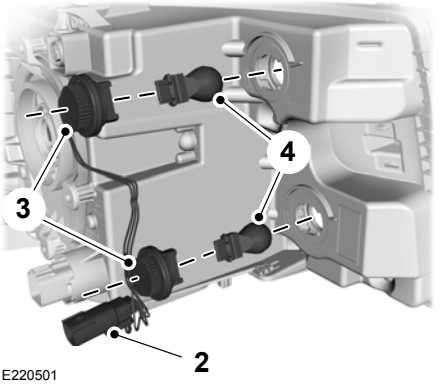
Headlamp



E220459

A	Headlamp low beam. Headlamp high beam.
B	Front direction indicator. Front parking lamp.
C	Front direction indicator. Front parking lamp.

Front Direction Indicator and Front Parking Lamp

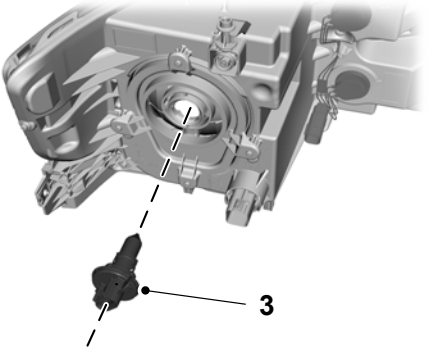


E220501

1. Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Headlamp Low Beam and Headlamp High Beam

Note: *If your vehicle has high-intensity discharge headlamps, these lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*



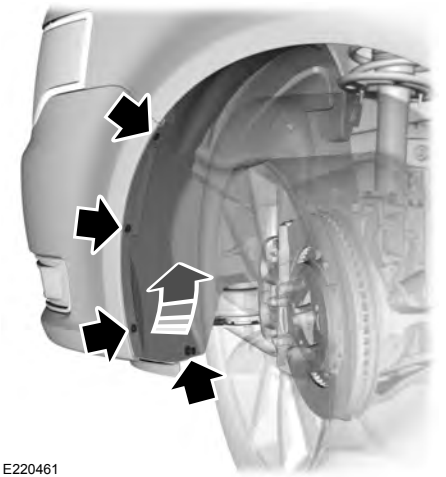
E220460

1. Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Front Fog Lamp (If Equipped)



E220461

1. Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off.
2. Use suitable tools, for example a screwdriver and a socket wrench, to remove the wheel arch liner fixings. Carefully reposition the wheel arch liner to access to the front fog lamp bulb and electrical connector.

Note: *To remove the lower push pin, use a flat-bladed screwdriver to pull up the center release pin.*

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

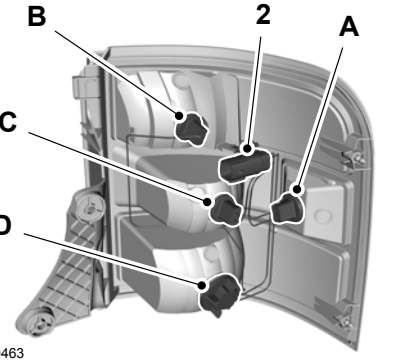
E174588

4. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

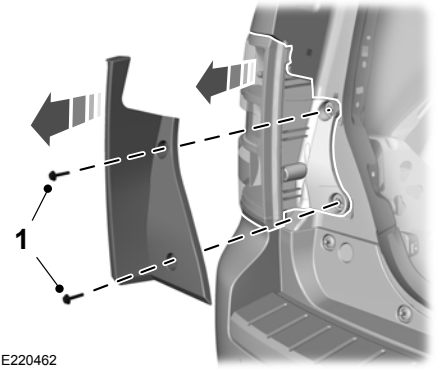
Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Brake and Rear Lamps, Rear Direction Indicator and Reversing Lamp



E220463

A	Rear side marker lamp.
B	Rear lamp.
C	Reversing lamp.
D	Brake and rear lamp. Rear direction indicator.



E220462

1. Remove the retaining bolts from the lamp assembly. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

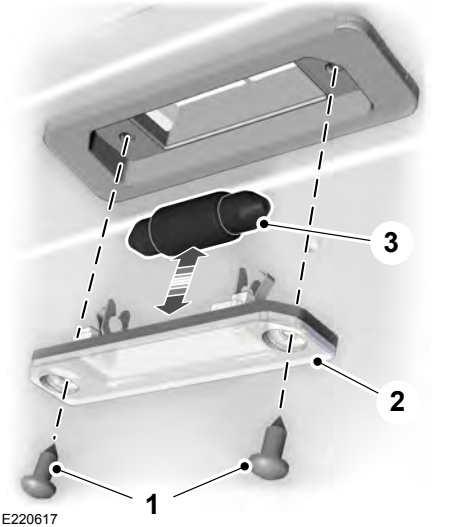
LED Lamps

LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following lamps are LED:

- Front side marker lamps.
- Side direction indicator.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Stop and rear lamp.

License Plate Lamp



E220617

1. Remove the screws that secure the lamp assembly.
2. Remove the lamp lens.
3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized D.O.T. marking for North America to make sure they have the proper lamp performance, light brightness, light pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front side marker lamps.	LED	LED
Front direction indicator. Front parking lamps.	3157NA	27/9
Headlamp low beam. Headlamp high beam.	9008 H13	55/65
Front fog lamps.	H11	55
Side direction indicator.	LED	LED
Rear side marker lamp.	194	5
Rear lamp.	194	5
Optional stop and rear lamp.	LED	LED
Brake and rear lamp. Rear direction indicator.	3157K	27/3
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED
Reversing lamps.	921	16
License plate lamp.	C5WL	5

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Interior lamp.	578	10
Rear dome lamp.	578	10
Map lamp.	12V6W	6

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING

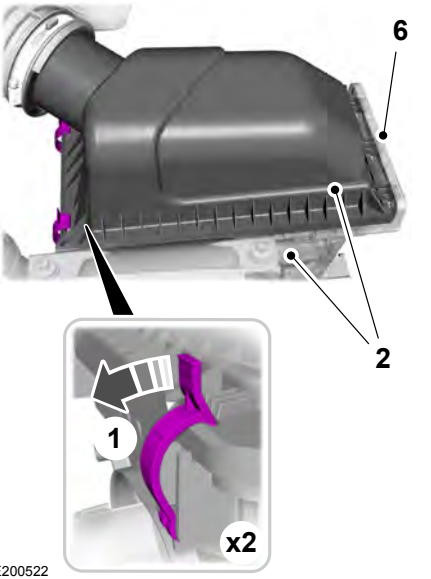
To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the engine air filter, do not allow debris or foreign material to enter the air induction system. Engine components are susceptible to damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Change the air filter element at the correct interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

Incorrect component use can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 300).

To replace the air filter element do the following:



E200522

1. Remove the clips that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
6. Install the air filter housing cover.
7. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

Materials

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Detail Wash ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser ZC-20 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo CXC-66-A (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Leather and Vinyl Cleaner ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner CXC-101 (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant CXC-37-A/B/D/F (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover ZC-14 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)	

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179ºF (82ºC).
- Use a spray with a 40º wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90º angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNINGS

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See* ***Cleaning Leather Seats*** *(page 270).*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If Equipped)

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminates which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.

- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes, using other sizes could damage your vehicle. If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealer to have the system reprogrammed. If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted by the manufacturer, you can check the suitability with an authorized dealer.

Additional information related to the functionality and maintenance of your tires can be found later in this chapter. See **Tire Care** (page 275).

The Ford recommended tire inflation pressures can be found on the Tire Label, which is located on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver's door. This information can also be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door last post; next to the driver's seating position).

Ford strongly recommends maintaining these tire pressures at all times. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns, reduced fuel economy, and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Note: *Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.*

Note: *Check your tire pressures at least once per month.*

Set the pressure for your spare tire to the highest value given for your vehicle and tire size combination (if equipped).

Notice to utility vehicle and truck owners

WARNINGS

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers, drive at safe speeds for the conditions, keep tires inflated to Ford recommended pressures, never overload or improperly load your vehicle, and make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

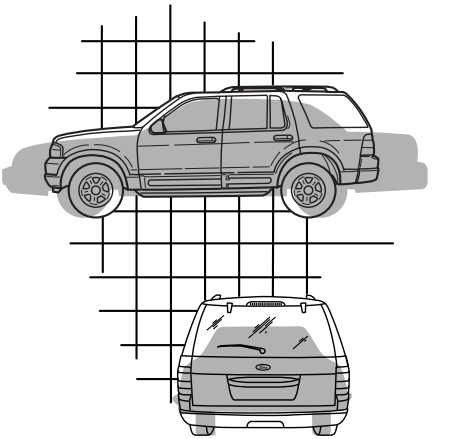
E145298

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

Study your owner's manual and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

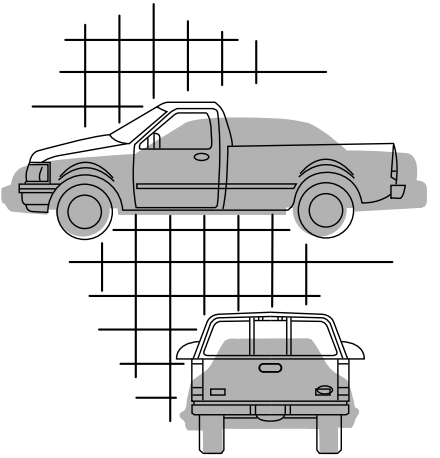
How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Sport utility vehicles and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



E145299

- Higher - to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter - to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower - to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



E168583

As a result of the above dimensional differences, Sport utility vehicles and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition. These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

TIRE CARE

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading

E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**.

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

*__Tire label:__ A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

*__Tire Identification Number (TIN):__ A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

*__Inflation pressure:__ A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

*__Standard load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

*__Extra load:__ A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

*__kPa:__ Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

*__PSI:__ Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

*__Cold tire pressure:__ The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

*__Recommended inflation pressure:__ The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

* __B-pillar:__ The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

*__Bead area of the tire:__ Area of the tire next to the rim.

* __Sidewall of the tire:__ Area between the bead area and the tread.

*__Tread area of the tire:__ Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

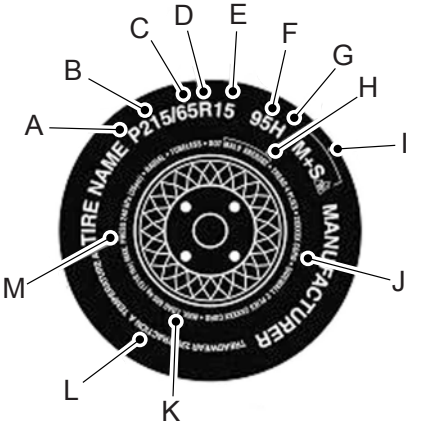
*__Rim:__ The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

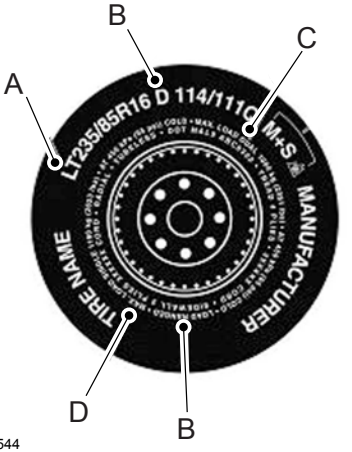
M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

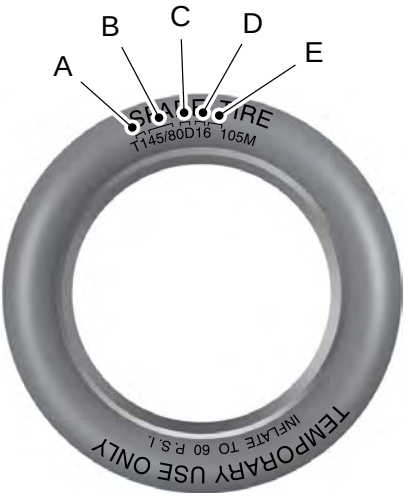
C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Recommended Tire Pressures and Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat. Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check the pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

WARNING

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge. Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You will find a Tire Label containing the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure by the tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver's door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

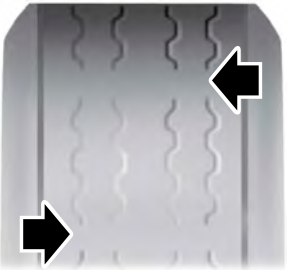
Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire

is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Age

WARNING

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which

WARNINGS

is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.

2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

WARNINGS

3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNINGS

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

*Observe posted speed limits

*Avoid fast starts, stops and turns

*Avoid potholes and objects on the road

*Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

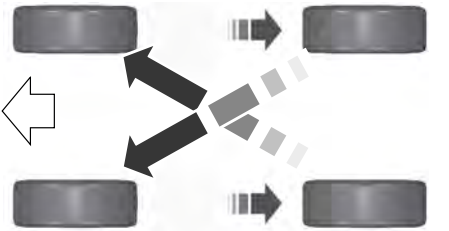
Tire Rotation

Note: *If your tires show uneven wear, ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.



E142547

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING

Snow tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury, and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case, or power transfer unit failure. It is also strongly advised to follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Note: *The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Use only SAE Class S snow chains, snow cables or equivalent on the front axle for P235/60R17, P235/60R18, and P235/55R19 equipped vehicles. The use of snow chains, snow cables or other traction assist devices that are larger than SAE Class S may cause damage to your vehicle's wheel house, suspension and/or body.
- Do not install tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices on the rear tires. This could cause damage to the vehicle's wheel house or body.
- Do not use tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices with 255/45R20 tires.
- Install cable chains securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables on your vehicle.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and retighten the cables. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Remove the tire cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire cables on dry roads.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

E142549

Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See Inflating Your Tires in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30ºF (17ºC) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS

The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.

See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 290). If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 290). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNINGS

When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent your vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

To help prevent your vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N), set the parking brake, and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of your vehicle) to the tire being changed.

WARNINGS

Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

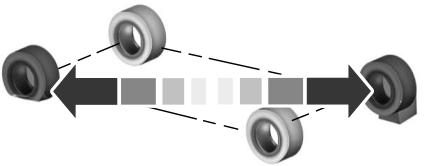
Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in your vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Note: *Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.*

Note: *If the third row seat is stowed in the floor, you will need to unstow it to access the spare tire.*

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.



E142551

3. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.

E211099

4. Remove the carpeted floor panel located in the rear of the vehicle, then remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Lift and remove the spare tire from the trunk.
6. Remove the second wing nut that secures the jack retention bracket by turning it counterclockwise. Then remove the jack kit from the vehicle.
7. Remove the jack, L-shaped bolt, and the wrench from the felt bag. Fold down the wrench socket to use to loosen the lug nuts and to operate the jack.

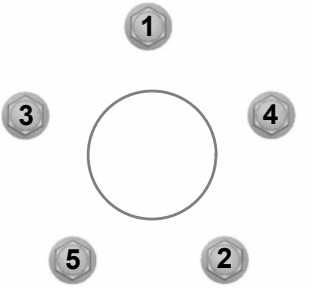
8. Remove the wheel cover with the lug wrench tip and loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

E145908

9. The vehicle jacking points are shown above, and are depicted on the warning label on the jack.

E201156

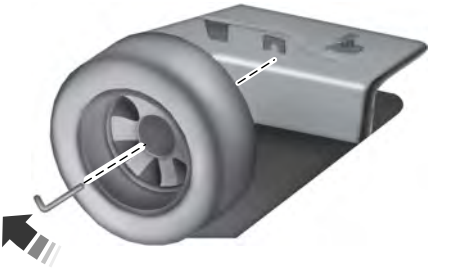
10. Put the jack in the jack notch next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.
11. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
12. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
13. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

14. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 298).
15. Install the wheel cover.

Stowing the flat tire



E194296

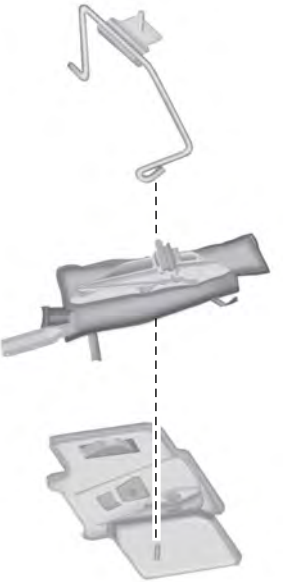
If you are stowing the flat tire, remove the L-shaped bolt from the external pocket of the felt bag. With the third row seat in the raised position, stand the flat tire in the rear of the vehicle with the tire's valve stem facing the rear of the vehicle. Fasten the flat tire to the vehicle by inserting the L-shaped bolt through one of the lug bolt holes in the wheel. Turn it clockwise into the threaded hole in the vehicle until the tire is secured.

If you are stowing the temporary spare tire, place the tire over the jack and secure it with the large wing nut.

Stowing the jack

E211100

1. Fully collapse the jack, fold the lug wrench socket into the handle and place the jack and wrench into the felt bag. Place the extension bolt or L-shaped bolt into the external pocket of the felt bag. Position the jack as shown to make sure that the locating holes in the jack base can be placed on the locating tabs of the jack mounting bracket in the spare tire tub.
2. Securely close the wrench compartment and the jack bag using the Velcro™ straps.
3. Place the jack kit on the angled bracket in the spare tire tub, using the locating tabs to position the jack correctly.



E211101

4. Insert the straight end of the jack retention bracket through the eyelet of the angled bracket and swing the retention bracket over the jack. With the jack in place, place the looped end of the retention bracket over the threaded stud in the trunk floor and secure it with the plastic wing nut.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

WARNING

When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm) *
1/2 x 20	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

A Wheel pilot bore

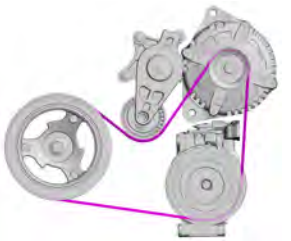
Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.5L DURATEC

Engine	3.5L V6
Cubic inches	214
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.049 - 0.053 in (1.25 mm - 1.35 mm)
Compression ratio	10.8:1

Drivebelt Routing

3.5L Engine



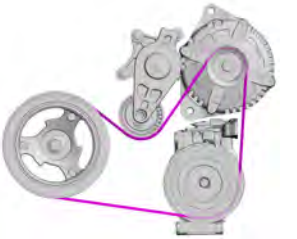
E191904

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.5L ECOBOOST™

Engine	3.5L EcoBoost
Cubic inches	214
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.0295 - 0.0335 in (0.75 mm - 0.85 mm)
Compression ratio	10.0:1

Drivebelt Routing

3.5L EcoBoost Engine



E191904

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 3.5L DURATEC

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1884
Oil filter	FL-500-S
Battery	BXT-65-650
Spark plugs	SP-520
Cabin air filter	FP-68
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2301 (driver side) WW-2103 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1202

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 3.5L ECOBOOST™

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1884
Oil filter	FL-500-S
Battery	BXT-65-750
Spark plugs	SP-534
Cabin air filter	FP-68
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2301 (driver side) WW-2103 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1202

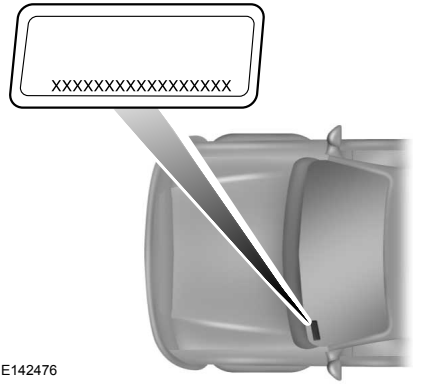
We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

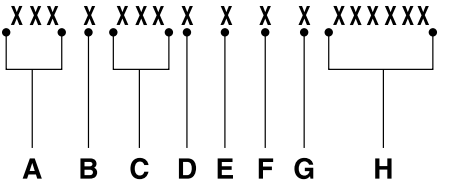
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

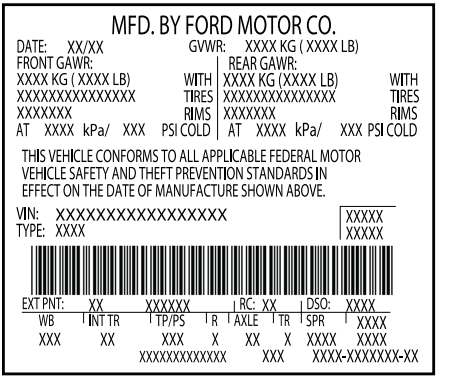
The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:



E142477

A	World manufacturer identifier
B	Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
C	Make, vehicle line, series, body type
D	Engine type
E	Check digit
F	Model year
G	Assembly plant
H	Production sequence number

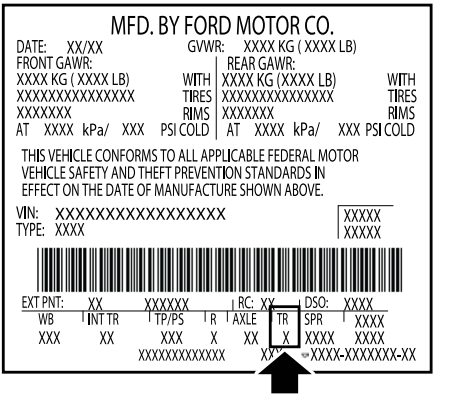
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission 6F55	G
Six-speed automatic transmission 6F50	J

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 3.5L DURATEC

Capacities

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil	6.0 qt (5.7 L)
Engine coolant	13.2 qt (12.5 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Automatic transmission fluid	10.9 qt (10.3 L) *
Rear axle fluid (All Wheel Drive)	2.43 pt (1.15 L)
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive)	17.9 fl oz (0.53 L)
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	18.6 gal (70.4 L)
A/C refrigerant	2.31 lb (1.05 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	8.96 fl oz (265 ml)

* Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended Motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LSP12	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico):	WSS-M2C945-A

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W20-QSP	
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W20-QFS	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional Motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LFS12	WSS-M2C945-A
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-10-QLVC	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Rear axle fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant XY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Rear axle fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-80W90-1L	WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive) (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant XY-75W140-QL	WSL-M2C192-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive) (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-75W140-1L	WSL-M2C192-A

Name	Specification
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

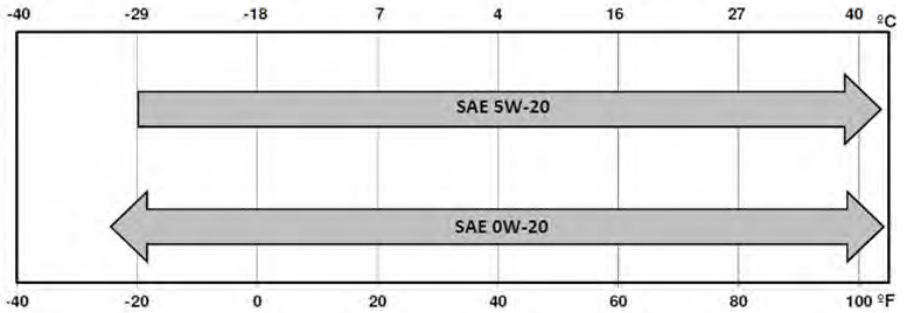
Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0ºF (-30ºC) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil: Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20 XO-0W20-QSP	WSS-M2C947-A



E240522

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 3.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil	6.0 qt (5.7 L)
Engine coolant	13.7 qt (13 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN/MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Automatic transmission fluid	11.6 qt (11 L) *
Rear axle fluid (All Wheel Drive)	2.43 pt (1.15 L)
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive)	17.9 fl oz (0.53 L)
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	18.6 gal (70.4 L)

Item	Capacity
A/C refrigerant	2.45 lb (1.11 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	7.95 fl oz (235 ml)

* Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W30-QSP	WSS-M2C946-A
Recommended Motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W30-LSP12	WSS-M2C946-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W30-QSP	WSS-M2C946-A
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W30-QFS	WSS-M2C946-A
Optional Motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W30-LFS12	WSS-M2C946-A
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft® Orange Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake fluid: Motorcraft® DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV

Name	Specification
XT-10-QLVC	
Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Rear axle fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant XY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Rear axle fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-80W90-1L	WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive) (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant XY-75W140-QL	WSL-M2C192-A
Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (All Wheel Drive) (Canada): Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant CXY-75W140-1L	WSL-M2C192-A
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft® R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft® PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B

Name	Specification
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.

E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

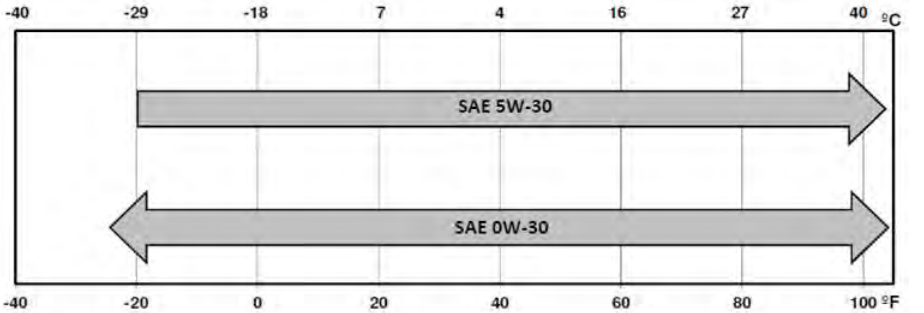
Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -22.0ºF (-30ºC) or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil: Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30 XO-0W30-QSP	WSS-M2C953-A1



E240523

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.7 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

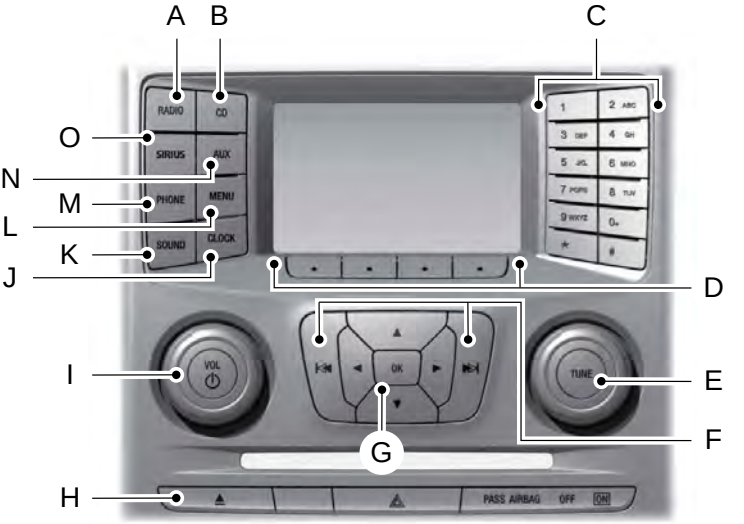
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/SATELLITE RADIO

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Some features, such as SIRIUS satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*



E210707

A **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

B **CD:** Press to listen to a CD. Press the function buttons to scroll through the menu choices.

C **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

D **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (for example Radio mode or CD mode).

E **TUNE:** Press to manually search through the radio frequency band.

F **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If a specific category is selected (such as jazz, rock or news), press to find the next or previous in the selected category. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

G **OK and Arrow buttons:** Press **OK** to confirm menu selections. Press to scroll through the menu choices.

H **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

I **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

J **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

K **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

L **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features.

M **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

N **AUX:** Press to access or switch between devices you plug into your vehicle.

O **SIRIUS:** Press to listen to Sirius satellite radio.

Menu Structure

Note: *Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.*

Press **MENU**.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu. Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press **OK** to confirm a selection.

Radio	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Radio Text*	Select to display extra information such as artist name.

*Extra information may not always be available.

Audio Settings	
Speed Compensated Volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7 or off, low, medium, high.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
Sound Mode	Choose between stereo and surround. Only with the external sound systems.

CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.

Clock Settings	
Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

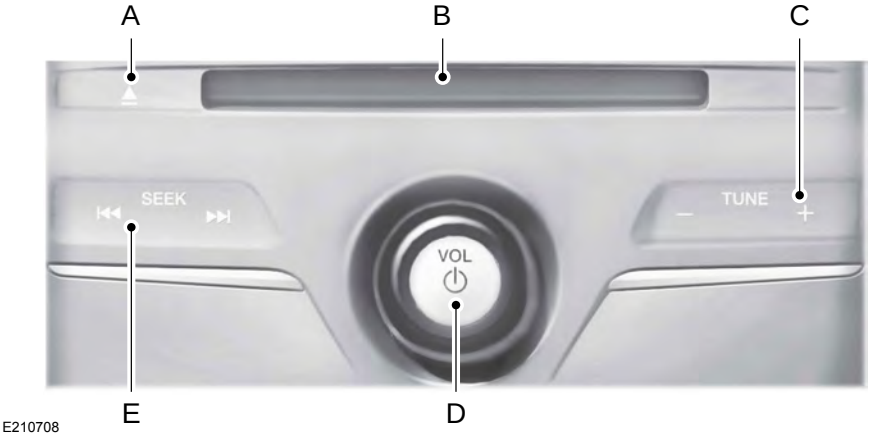
Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: PREMIUM AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*



A **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

C **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.

D **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

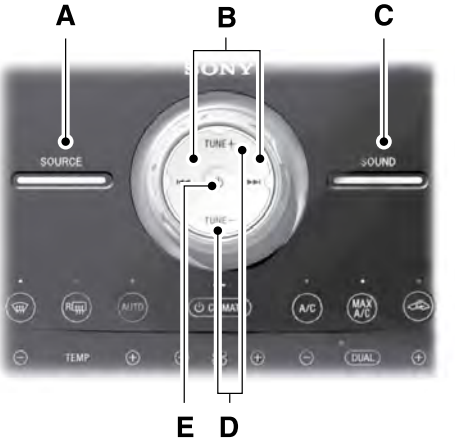
E **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

Note: *The touchscreen controls most of the audio features. See your SYNC information.*

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AM/FM/CD

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E210709

A **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, such as AM, FM, Satellite Radio and Line in.

B **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

C **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

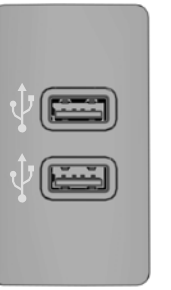
D **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band.

E **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn to adjust the volume.

USB PORT (If Equipped)

E176344

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See your SYNC information.



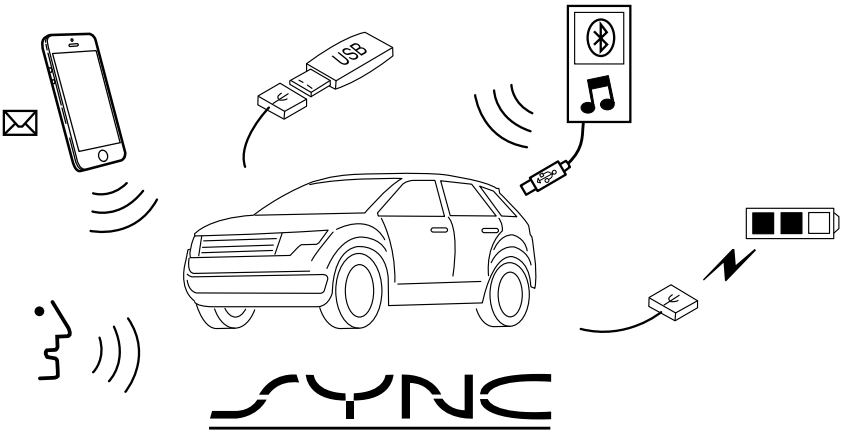
E211463

See your SYNC information.

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

You can locate the media hub inside the center console or on the instrument panel.

GENERAL INFORMATION



E198355

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist.*
- Use applications, such as Spotify, via SYNC AppLink.**
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

*These features are not available in all markets and require activation.

**Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mph (5 km/h).

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the section on 911 Assist.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- After pressing the voice button, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice button.

Initiating a Voice Session

Initiate a voice session by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel controls. See **Voice Control** (page 77).

When prompted you can say any of the following:

Voice command	If you want the system to carry out the following
Bluetooth Audio	Stream audio from your phone.
Cancel	Cancel the requested action.
mobile (apps | applications)	Access mobile applications.
Phone	Make calls.
USB [1]	Access the device connected to your USB port.

Voice command	If you want the system to carry out the following
Voice Settings | Voice Preferences	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
Help	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where (cancel | stop | exit) appears you say; cancel or stop or exit.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where mobile (apps | applications) appears, you must say mobile followed by either apps or applications.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings). You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level

Initiate a voice session by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel controls. See **Voice Control** (page 77).

When prompted say the following:

Voice command	If you want the system to carry out the following
Voice Settings | Voice Preferences	
Followed by either of the following:	
Interaction Mode Standard	Provide more detailed interaction and guidance.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Provide less audible interaction and more tone prompts.

The system defaults to the standard interaction mode.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request. For example, the system may ask "Phone, is that correct?". If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested and may ask you to confirm settings.

Voice command	If you want the system to carry out the following
Confirmation Prompts Off	Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
Confirmation Prompts On	Clarify your voice command with a short question.

The system creates candidate lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command. When turned on, it may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

For example, say "Say 1 after the tone to call John Doe at home. Say 2 after the tone to call Johnny Doe on mobile. Say 3 after the tone to call Jane Doe at home." You could also say "Say 1 after the tone to play John Doe, Say 2 after the tone to play Johnny Doe."

Voice command	If you want the system to carry out the following
Media Candidate Lists Off	Make a best guess from the media candidate list. You may still occasionally be asked questions.
Media Candidate Lists On	Clarify your voice command for media candidates.
Phone Candidate Lists Off	Make a best guess from the phone candidate list. You may still occasionally be asked questions.
Phone Candidate Lists On	Clarify your voice command for phone candidates.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are cell phone-dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, see your cell phone's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing a Cell Phone for the First Time

Note: *SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 1,000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.*

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Put the transmission in position park (**P**) (automatic transmission) or neutral with the parking brake applied (manual transmission).*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Press the phone button. When the display indicates there is no cell phone paired, do the following:

Message	Action and Description
NO PHONE	Press the **OK** button.
FIND SYNC	1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Put your cell phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your device's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Put the transmission in position park (**P**) (automatic transmission) or neutral with the parking brake applied (manual transmission).*

Press the phone button, then scroll to:

Message	Action
PHONE SETNGS	Press the **OK** button.
BT DEVICES	Press the **OK** button.
ADD DEVICE	Press the **OK** button. When the following message appears in the display.
FIND SYNC	1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Put your cell phone into Bluetooth discovery mode. See your device's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by SYNC in the radio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system then prompts with questions, such as if you would like to set the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) or download your phonebook.

Phone Voice Commands

Press the voice icon and say:

Voice Commands
Phone
You can then say any of the following commands.
Call History Incoming
Call History Missed
Call History Outgoing

Voice Commands
Phonebook ___
Phonebook ___ at Home
Phonebook ___ at Work
Phonebook ___ in Office
Phonebook ___ on Cell

___ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Mom".

You can also say any of the following:

Voice Command
Call ___
Call ___ at Home
Call ___ at Work
Call ___ in Office
Call ___ on Mobile
Call ___ on Other
Dial

None of these commands are available until your cell phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.

___ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Mom".

The following commands are only available during active calls:

Voice Commands
Go To Privacy
Hold
Join

Phone Menu Commands

To access the phone menu with voice commands, press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
[Phone] Menu
You can then say any of the following:
[Phone] Connections | [Media] Connections | [Bluetooth] Connections
[Phone] Settings [Message] Notification On
[Phone] Settings [Message] Notification Off
[Phone] Settings [Set] Phone Ringer
[Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer 1
[Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer 2
[Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer 3
[Phone] Settings [Set] Ringer Off
Battery
Phone Name
Signal
Text Message Inbox
Send [New] Text Message

You do not need to say word contained within brackets for the system to understand your command.

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press MENU to go to the PHONE menu.*

Phonebook Commands

When you ask SYNC to access content, for example the phonebook name or number, the requested information appears in the display to view.

Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Call ___	This command is not available until your cell phone information is completely downloaded using Bluetooth.
Dial	Use to enter a phone number digit by digit.
When the system confirms the number say one of the following commands:	
Dial	To confirm the number and initiate the call.
delete	To erase the last spoken digit. You can also press the left arrow button.
clear	To erase all spoken digits. You can also press and hold the left arrow button.

To end a call, press and hold the red phone button.

Receiving Calls

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the phone button.
- Reject the call by pressing and holding the red phone button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, for example putting a call on hold or joining calls. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

Press the MENU button during an active call, then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
CALL MENU	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
PRIVACY	Press the **OK** button to switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation.
CALL HOLD	Press the **OK** button to put an active call on hold.
JOIN CALLS	Join two separate calls. SYNC supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty call or conference call.

Message	Action and Description	
	1. Press the phone button. 2. Access the desired contact through SYNC or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, press **MENU**. 3. Scroll to Join Calls, and press the **OK** button. Wait until the following message appears.	
	JOIN CALLS	Press the **OK** button.
ENTER TONES	Enter tones such as numbers for passwords. Scroll until the desired number appears in the display, then press OK; a tone sounds as confirmation. Repeat as necessary.	
PHONEBOOK	To access your phonebook contacts. 1. Press the **OK** button to select, and then scroll through your phonebook contacts. 2. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button to call the contact.	
CALL HISTORY	To access your call history log. 1. Press the **OK** button to select, then scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 2. Press the **OK** button when the desired selection appears in the display. 3. Press the phone button to call the selection.	
RETURN	Exit the current menu.	

Accessing Features Through the Phone Menu

The phone menu allows you to redial a number, access your call history and phonebook and sends text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as 911 Assist.

Press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu, then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description	
PHONE REDIAL	Press the **OK** button to redial the last number called. Press the **OK** button again to confirm.	
PHONE REDIAL	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls after you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC. Press the **OK** button then select one of the following and press the **OK** button again to confirm. INCOMING OUTGOING MISSED The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to SYNC (if the auto download feature is on and your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone supports this feature).	
PHONEBOOK	To browse your phonebook select:	
	BROWSE	Press **OK**. Scroll down or up to the desired name and press **OK**. In addition to the Phonebook entry name, the phone number label (Work, Cell, Home or Other) shows on the display. If there are multiple phone number entries for a particular Phonebook name, you can scroll through the different phone labels at this time. Once you have the desired phone label on the screen press **OK**. The phone number that is stored under the selected label will be shown on the display. Press **OK** to dial this number.
	To search for a contact in your phone book select:	
	SEARCH	Press **OK**. Scroll down until you see the first letter of your phonebook entry. Press **OK**. Scroll down until you see the second letter of your desired phonebook entry. Press **OK**.

Message	Action and Description	
		Repeat entering letters to narrow your search. When you are satisfied with your entry press the right arrow key on the bezel. SYNC will jump to the phonebook contact name that matches your entry. Press **OK**. In addition to the Phonebook entry name, the phone number label (Work, Cell, Home or Other) shows on the display. If there are multiple phone number entries for a particular Phonebook name, you can scroll through the different phone labels at this time. Once you have the desired phone label on the screen press **OK**. The phone number that is stored under the selected label will be shown on the display. Press **OK** to dial this number.
TEXT MESSAGE	Press the **OK** button to send, download, read and delete text messages.[1]	
PHONE SETNGS	View your cell phone's status, set ring tones, select your message notification, change phonebook entries and automatically download your cell phone content among other features.[1]	
911 Assist	Automatically place an emergency call to a 911 operator following a crash.[2]	
APPLICATIONS	Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.	
SYS SETTINGS	Access Bluetooth Devices menu listings and advanced menu listings.	
EXIT MENU	Press the **OK** button to exit the phone menu.	

[1] This is a cell phone-dependent feature.
[2] This is an optional feature and available in the United States and Canada only

Text Messaging

Note: *This is a cell phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a cell phone-dependent feature. Your cell phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Note: *Forwarding a text message is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

Note: *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

When a new text message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the information display indicates you have a new message.

Following the notification you can do any of the following:

Do nothing to have the message go into your text message inbox.

To have SYNC read you the message using voice commands, press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Read Message | Read Text Message | Text Message	SYNC will read the most recent text message to you.

To open the test message, press OK to receive and open the text message. Press OK again and SYNC reads your message aloud as you are not able to view the message. You can then also choose whether you'd like to reply or forward the message.

Reply or forward the message, press OK and scroll to choose between:

Message	Action and Description
REPLY TO MSG	Press the **OK** button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
FORWARD MSG	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your Phonebook or Call History. You can also choose enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

Text messaging is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone is compatible, SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages.

Note: *Sending a text message is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

Note: *You can only have one recipient per text message.*

Press the phone button, then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
TEXT MESSAGE	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
SEND MSG?	Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Scroll to your desired message. 3. Press the **OK** button. 4. Scroll through your phonebook, call history entries or enter a new number. 5. Press the **OK** button to enter the desired contact. 6. Press the **OK** button again when the system asks if you would like to send the message. The system sends each text message with the following signature: This message was sent from my Ford.
DOWNLOAD MSG	Allows you to download your unread messages to SYNC. To download the messages, press the **OK** button to select. The display indicates the system is downloading your messages. When downloading is complete, SYNC returns you to the inbox.
DELETE ALL	Allows you to delete current text messages from SYNC. To delete the messages, press the **OK** button to select. The display indicates when it is finished deleting all your text messages. SYNC returns you to the text message menu.
RETURN	Press the **OK** button to exit the current menu.

Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are cell phone-dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust some features. For example ring tones, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

Press the phone button, then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description	
PHONE SETNGS	Press the **OK** button.	
Select one of the following:		
PHONE STATUS	See the provider, name, signal power, battery power and roaming status of your connected cell phone. Press **OK** to select and scroll to view the information. When done, press **OK** again to return to the phone status menu.	
SET RINGER	Select which ring tone sounds during an incoming call. You can choose one of the system ring tones or your cell phone ring tones. Press the **OK** button and scroll to hear the available options. You can also choose to use to use your phone's ring tone.	
	Press the **OK** button to select the desired ring tone. If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone ring plays when you choose the phone ringer option.	
MSG NTFY	You have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button then select one of the following and press the **OK** button again to confirm. MSG NTFY ON MSG NTFY OFF	
MODIFY PHONEBOOK	Modify the contents of your phone book (such as add, delete, download). Press OK to select and scroll between:	
	ADD CONTACTS	Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook. Push the desired contact(s) on your cell phone. See your cell phone's manual on how to push contacts.
	DELETE PHONEBOOK	Press **OK** to delete the current phone book and call history. When Delete Phonebook appears, press OK to confirm. SYNC takes you back to the Phone Settings menu.
	DOWNLOAD PHONEBOOK	Press **OK** to select and press OK again when Confirm Download? appears.
AUTODOWNLOAD	Automatically download your phone book each time your phone connects to SYNC. Press OK to select.	

Message	Action and Description	
	AUTO ON?	When this message appears, press **OK** to have your phonebook automatically downloaded each time. Select Off to NOT download your phonebook every time your phone connects to SYNC. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your specific phone is connected to SYNC.[1]
SPEAK NAMES	When enabled, SYNC speaks the contact name that is displayed on the screen during phonebook browsing.	
RETURN	Exit the current menu.	

[1] Downloading times are cell phone-dependent and quantity-dependent. When Auto Download is on, it automatically deletes any changes, additions or deletions saved since your last download.

System Settings

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options.

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices, set a cell phone as primary as well as turn your Bluetooth feature on and off.

Press the Phone button to enter the Phone Menu, then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
SYS SETTINGS	Press the **OK** button.
BT DEVICES	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
ADD DEVICE	See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 326). [1]
CONNECT BT	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. [2] Press **OK** to select and view a list of previously paired phones. Scroll until the desired device is chosen, then press OK to connect the phone.
SET PRIMARY?	Set a previously paired phone as your primary phone. [4] Press **OK** to select and scroll to select the desired phone. Press OK to confirm.
BT ON/OFF	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off. [4]

Message	Action and Description
	Press **OK** and scroll to toggle between On and Off. When the desired selection is chosen, press **OK**. Setting Bluetooth to off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and turns off all Bluetooth features.
DEL DEVICE	Delete a paired cell phone. Press the **OK** button and scroll to select the device. Press **OK** to confirm.
DELETE ALL	Delete all previously paired phones (and all information originally saved with those phones). Press **OK** to select.
RETURN	Exit the current menu.

[1] This is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

[2] You can only connect one device at a time. When another cell phone is connected, the previous one is disconnected.

[3] SYNC attempts to connect with the primary phone at every ignition cycle. When a phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk (*).

[4] Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and deactivates all Bluetooth features.

Advanced

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults, perform a master reset, install an application and view system information.

To access the advanced menu, press the phone button to enter the Phone Menu, the scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
SYS SETTINGS	Press **OK**.
ADVANCED	Press **OK**.
Select one of the following:	
PROMPTS	Get help from SYNC by using questions, helpful hints or asking you for a specific action. To turn these prompts on or off:

Message	Action and Description	
	1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to select between On and Off. 2. Press the **OK** button when the desired selection appears in the display. SYNC returns you to the Advanced menu.	
LANGUAGES	1. Press **OK** to select and then scroll through the languages. Choose between English, Français and Español. Once selected, all of the radio displays and prompts are in the selected language. 2. Press **OK** when the desired selection appears in the display. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC returns you to the Advanced menu.	
DEFAULTS	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information, for example phonebook, call history, text messages or paired devices. Press the **OK** button to select and then press **OK** again when the following message appears in the display. RESTORE?	
MASTER RESET	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC, for example phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices, and return the system to the factory default settings. Press **OK** to select. The display indicates when complete. SYNC returns you to the Advanced menu.	
SYNC REBOOT	Press **OK** to select.	
	CONFIRM REBOOT?	Press **OK** to select. You only need to press the OK button once. SYNC will be unresponsive for 2-4 minutes while it is rebooting. Wait 2-4 minutes before attempting to execute a SYNC command.
INSTALL APP	Install applications you have downloaded. Press the **OK** button and scroll to select. Press the **OK** button to confirm.	
SYSTEM INFO	Access the Auto Version number as well as the FDN number. Press the **OK** button to select.	
RETURN	Exit the current menu.	

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (If Equipped)

In order for the following features to work, your cell phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.

911 Assist (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user turns 911 Assist on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is turned off, either a voice message plays or a display message (or icon) comes on (or both) when your vehicle is started after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 44). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 220). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Switching 911 Assist On or Off

Press the phone button to enter the phone menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
911 Assist	Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter the 911 Assist menu.
On Off	Press the **OK** button when the desired option appears in the radio display.

Off selections include:

Message	Action and Description
Off with reminder:	Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.
Off without reminder:	Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you turn on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not turn the feature on.

SYNC™ APPLINK™

SYNC Mobile Apps

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port in order to start the application.*

Note: *The AppLink feature is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFord Touch system.*

Note: *Depending on your display type, you can access AppLink from the media menu, the phone menu, or by using voice commands. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.*

To Access Using the Phone Menu

Press the phone button to access the SYNC phone menu on-screen. You can then scroll to:

Menu item	
Mobile Apps	Press **OK** to access a list of available applications. Scroll through the list of available applications and press OK to select a particular app. Once an app is running through SYNC, you can access an app's menu by pressing the **MENU** button to first access the SYNC menu.

Scroll until the app name followed by "Menu", is displayed (such as, sticher Menu), then press **OK**. From here, you can access an application's features, such as Thumbs up and Thumbs down.

For more information, please visit:

Website
www.SYNCMyRide.com

To Access Using the Media Menu

Press the **AUX** button on the center console.

Press the Menu button to the SYNC menu and scroll to:

Menu item	Action and description
SYNC-Media	Press the **OK** button.
Mobile Apps	Press the **OK** button and scroll through the list of available applications and select your desired app.

Scroll until the app name followed by "Menu", is displayed (such as, Stitcher Menu), then press **OK**. From here, you can access an application's features, such as Thumbs up and Thumbs down.

For more information, please visit:

Website
www.SYNCMyRide.com

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	Action and description
Mobile Apps	Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example, "Playlist Road Trip".
You can also say the following:	
The name of an app (such as Stitcher) followed by "help".	To discover the available voice commands.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist and album.

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 6,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod®, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports the following audio formats MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

To Connect Using Voice Commands

Plug the device into the USB port. See **USB Port** (page 320).

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	Action and Description
USB [1]	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See Media voice commands.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where USB[1]appears, you can say USB or USB one.

To Connect Using the System Menu

Plug the device into the USB port. See **USB Port** (page 320).

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

You can then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
SELECT SRC	Press the **OK** button.
SYNC USB	Press the **OK** button. Depending on how many digital media files are on your connected device, the following message may appear in the radio display. Indexing...
When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the Play menu. You can then select one of the following:	
PLAY ALL	
ARTISTS	
ALBUMS	
GENRES	
PLAYLISTS	
TRACKS	
EXPLORE USB	
SIMILARMUSIC	
RETURN	Exit the current menu.

What's Playing?

When a track is playing, you can ask the system to tell you what is currently playing.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	Action and Description
Whats This? | Whats Playing?	The system reads the metadata tags of the playing track, and if the metadata tags are populated, the system will tell you what track is playing.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by \|. For example, where; (what's \| what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where text shows: (what's \| what is) playing, you must say; "what's playing" or "what is playing".

Media Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following:

Voice command	
USB [1]	
You can then say any of the following	
[Phone] Connections | [Media] Connections | [Bluetooth] Connections	
Pause	
Play	
Play All	
Play Artist ___	1,2
Play Album ___	1,2
Play Genre ___	1,2
[Play] Next Folder	3
[Play] Next Track | [Play] Next Song	

Voice command	
Play Playlist ___	1,2
[Play] Previous Folder	3
[Play] Previous Track | [Play] Previous Song	
[Play] Next Track | [Play] Next Song	1,2
Repeat [On]	
Repeat Off	
Shuffle [On]	
Shuffle Off	
Search Album ___	1,2
Search Artist ___	1,2

Voice command		
Search Genre ___	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and, if available, begins to play the chosen type of music. You can only play genres of music which are present in the GENRE metadata tags that you have on your digital media player.	1,2
Search Track ___ | Search Song ___	The system searches for a specific artist/track/album from the music indexed through the USB port.	1,2
Refine album ___	This allows you to make your previous command more specific. By using this command you can filter though a previous selection, such as an artist to play only specific album.	1,2
Similar Music	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.	

Voice command	
Autoplay Off	
Autoplay [on]	Turn autoplay on to listen to music processed during indexing. Turn autoplay off to allow the indexing process to finish before the system plays any of your music.

[1] ___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

[2] This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

[3] This voice command is only available in folder mode.

Bluetooth Audio Command Guide

Press the voice button and say:

Voice command
Bluetooth Audio
You can then say any of the following:
[Phone] Connections | [Media] Connections | [Bluetooth] Connections
Pause
Play
[Play] Next Track | [Play] Next Song
[Play] Previous Track | [Play] Previous Song

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select your media source, how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to add, connect or delete devices.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

You can then scroll to:

Message		Action and Description
PLAY MENU		Play your music by artist, album, genre, playlists, tracks, similar music or to simply, play all. You can also choose to Explore USB to view the supported digital music files on your playing device. See Play Menu later in this section for more information.
Select one of the following:		
SELECT SRC	SYNC USB	Press the **OK** button to access music plugged into your USB port. You can also plug in devices to charge them (if supported by your device). Once connected, the system indexes any readable media files.[1]
	SYNC BT	Press the **OK** button. This is a phone-dependent feature that allows you to stream music playing on your Bluetooth-enabled phone. If supported by your device, you can press seek to play the previous or next track.
	SYNC LINE IN (If Equipped)	Press the **OK** button to select and play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers.[2]
MEDIA SETTIN	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music and select your Auto-play settings. Once you turn these selections on, they remain on until you turn them off. Press **SEEK** to play the previous or next track.[3]	
	SHUFFLE	Press the **OK** button to shuffle available media files in the current playlist. To shuffle all media tracks, you must select Play All in the play menu and then select Shuffle.
	REPEAT	Press the **OK** button to repeat any song.

Message		Action and Description
	AUTOPLAY	Press the **OK** button to turn autoplay on to listen to music processed during indexing. Turn autoplay off to allow the indexing process to finish before the system plays any of your music.[4]
APPLICATIONS	Interact with SYNC-capable mobile applications on your smartphone.	
SYS SETTINGS	Access available Bluetooth Device menu listings as well as Advanced menu listings.	
EXIT MENU	Press **OK** to exit the media menu.	

[1]The time required to complete this depends on the size of the media the system needs to index. If autoplay is on, you can listen to media processed during indexing. If autoplay is off, you cannot listen to music until the system finishes indexing media. SYNC is capable of indexing thousands of average size media and notifies you if it reaches the maximum indexing file size.

[2]If you have already connected a device to the USB port, you cannot access the line in feature. Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.

[3]Some digital media players require both USB and line in ports to stream data and music separately.

[4]Indexing times can vary from device to device and with regard to the number of songs the system needs to process.

Accessing Your Play Menu

This menu allows you to select and play your media by artist, album, genre, playlist, track, similar music or even to explore what is on your USB device.

Make sure that your device is plugged into the USB port and is turned on.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

You can then scroll to select:

Message	Action and Description
PLAY MENU	Press the **OK** button.
If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options:	
PLAY ALL	Press the **OK** button. The first track title appears in the display.

Message	Action and Description
	Play all indexed media (tracks) from your playing device in flat file mode, one at a time in numerical order.
ARTISTS	Sort all indexed media by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically. If there are fewer than 255 indexed artists, the system lists them alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press the **OK** button. You can select to play all artists or any indexed artist. 2. Scroll to choose the desired artist. Press the **OK** button.
ALBUMS	Sort all indexed media by albums. If there are fewer than 255 indexed albums, the system lists them alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press the **OK** button. You can enter the album menu and select from playing all albums or from any individual indexed album. 2. Scroll to choose the desired album. Press the **OK** button.
GENRES	Sort indexed music by genre (category) type. SYNC lists the genres alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre. Press the **OK** button.
PLAYLISTS	Access your playlists from formats ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP. The system lists your playlists alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist. Press the **OK** button.
TRACKS	Search for and play a specific indexed track. SYNC lists your tracks alphabetically in flat file mode. If there are more than 255, the system categorizes them alphabetically. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Scroll to select the desired track. Press the **OK** button.

Message	Action and Description
EXPLORE USB	Explore all supported digital media on your media device connected to the USB port. You can only view media content which is compatible with SYNC; other files saved are not visible. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Scroll to explore indexed media on your flash drive.
SIMILARMUSIC	Play music similar to what is currently playing from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each song to compile a playlist for you.* 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. The system creates a new list of similar songs and begins playing. This feature does not include tracks with incomplete metadata information. Press the **OK** button.
RETURN	Exit the current menu.

*With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks are not available in voice recognition, play menu or similar music. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in "Mass Storage Device Mode", they are available in voice recognition, play menu browsing and similar music. The system places Unknown items into any unpopulated metadata tag.

System Settings

System settings provide access to your Bluetooth Devices and Advanced menu features.

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to enable, disable, add, connect and delete a Bluetooth device.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

You can then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
SYS SETTINGS	Press the **OK** button.
BT DEVICES	Press the **OK** button.
You can then select one of the following:	
ADD DEVICE	Pair more devices to the system.*

Message	Action and Description
	1. Press the **OK** button. When find SYNC appears in the display, press the **OK** button again. 2. Follow the directions in your phone's manual to put your phone into discovery mode. A six-digit PIN appears in the display. 3. When prompted on your phone's six-digit display, enter the PIN.
Connect BT	Connect a previously paired Bluetooth-enabled phone. 1. Press **OK** to select and view a list of devices. 2. Scroll until the desired device is chosen and press **OK** to connect the device.
BT ON/OFF	Turn the Bluetooth feature on and off.** 1. Press the **OK** button and scroll to toggle between on and off. 2. Make a selection and press the **OK** button.
DEL DEVICE	Delete a paired media device. 1. Press the **OK** button and scroll to select the device. 2. Press the **OK** button to confirm.
DELETE ALL	Delete all previously paired devices. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Press the **OK** button to confirm.
RETURN	Exit the current menu.

*This is a speed-dependent feature. It is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.

**Setting Bluetooth to off disconnects all Bluetooth devices and turns off all Bluetooth features.

Advanced

The Advanced menu allows you to access and set prompts, languages, defaults and perform a master reset.

Press the **AUX** button, then the **Menu** button to enter the Media Menu.

You can then scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
SYS SETTINGS	Press the **OK** button.
ADVANCED	Press the **OK** button.
You can then select one of the following:	
PROMPTS	Have SYNC guide you by asking questions, helpful hints or ask you for a specific action. 1. Press the **OK** button and scroll to toggle between on and off. 2. Make a selection and press the **OK** button. SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
LANGUAGES	Choose from the available languages. The displays and prompts are in the selected language. 1. Press the **OK** button and scroll through the available languages. 2. Press the **OK** button when the desired language appears in the display. 3. If you change the language setting, the display indicates that the system is updating. When complete, SYNC takes you back to the Advanced menu.
DEFAULTS	Return to the factory default settings. This selection does not erase your indexed information, for example phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Press the **OK** button. When restore defaults appears in the display, press the **OK** button again to confirm.
MASTER RESET	Completely erase all information stored on SYNC. All phonebook, call history, text messages and all paired devices will be deleted and the system will return to the factory default settings.
INSTALL APP	Download available software applications through the USB port.
RETURN	Exit the current menu.

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca for more information.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature. If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. Update your device's firmware. Turn off the Auto phonebook download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port. Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature. The device is not connected.	Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function. Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information. The file may be corrupted. The song may have copyright protection, which does not allow it to play.	Make sure that all song details are populated. Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections. After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it. The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section. Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation. Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles". If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A". Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands. You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it. Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters. Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.	Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson". Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting. The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe". Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them. If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit" or "Quit" option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting "Apps." then finding the particular app and choosing "Force stop." Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a bluetooth bug on some order versions of the Android OS. This bug may cause apps that were found the last time your phone connected to SYNC not to be found again if you have not turned off bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of availble Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, climate control, navigation, and your phone's SYNC 3 compatible apps.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.

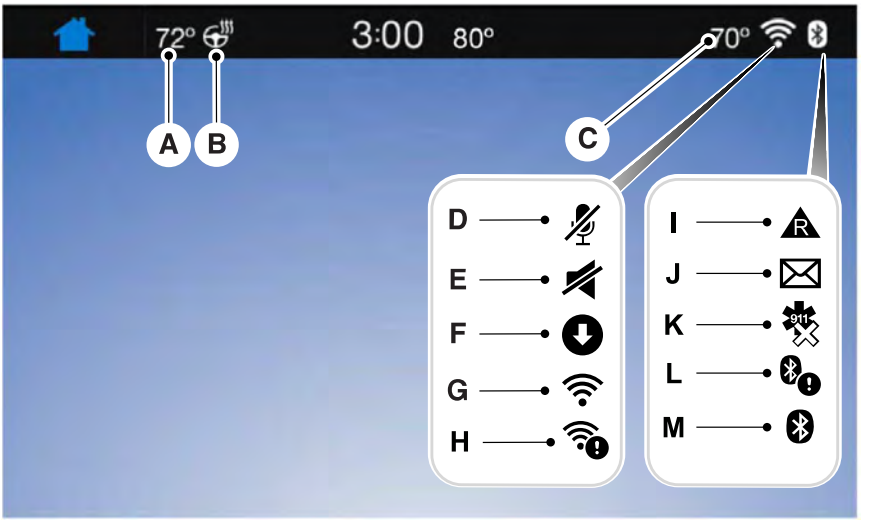
Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including climate settings, voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location. See **Settings** (page 410).
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.



E223130

Callout	Item	Description
A	Driver Temperature	This shows the temperature the driver selects through the climate control system.
B	Heated steering wheel (If equipped)	When you activate the heated steering wheel option on the touch screen, this icon displays. It only displays when there is not a physical button for the heated steering wheel.
C	Passenger Temperature	When the passenger's temperature has been adjusted and is no longer linked to the driver's temperature, it displays here. If Dual is turned off and the temperatures are linked, the passenger's temperature does not display.
D	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
E	Mute	This icon displays when the audio system is muted.

Callout	Item	Description
F	Download	This icon appears when SYNC 3 receives a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software.
G	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
H	Wi-Fi in Range	An available Wi-Fi network is within range.
I	Roaming	This icon displays when your cell phone is roaming.
J	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.
K	911 Assist Off	This icon displays when 911 Assist is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
L	Bluetooth Alert	The Bluetooth alert icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert.
M	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including AM, FM and satellite radio, CDs, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Climate	Allows you to adjust the temperature, fan speed and airflow within the vehicle.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iphone or android device. Also, access built-in additional features such as SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (if equipped).
	If your vehicle is a hybrid, plug-in hybrid, or electric this is also where your settings and power information is located.
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

Note: *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 374).

Accessing and Adjusting Modes Through Your Vehicle Information Display (If Equipped)

Depending on your vehicle and selected options you may be able to control some of the SYNC 3 features on your information display. The features are visible the right hand display (A).

E208626

You can make the following adjustments using the information display SYNC 3 screen:

Option	Information
Audio	Information for current audio playing.
	Select source.
Navigation	View current road and speed limit (if information is available).
	View current route, next turn, time to your destination (depending on cluster level), distance to destination (depending on cluster level), and ability to cancel route.
	If you do not have an active navigation route programed, the compass is shown.
Phone	If you are not on a call, a call can be made by selecting:[1]

Option	Information				
	Quick dial	All calls	Incoming calls	Outgoing calls	Missed calls
	If you are on a call, the call information is displayed on the information display.				
	If you are receiving a call, you can accept it by selecting OK on the right-hand steering wheel controls.				

[1] Depending on your vehicle options, all of these choices may not display.

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes.

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode, use the left arrow to exit the mode.
- Press the up and down arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, compass appears in the display instead of navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its true direction is to the right of west).*

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Mute: Mute the audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets.
- While in USB, Bluetooth Audio or CD mode, press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: *On some models, **SEEK NEXT** may be combined with **PHONE REJECT** and **SEEK PREVIOUS** may be combined with **PHONE ACCEPT.***

M: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media sources (modes).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 75).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power:** Switch the audio system on and off.
- **VOL:** Control the volume of playing audio.
- **Seek** and **Tune:** Use as you normally would in audio modes.
- **Eject:** Eject a CD from the audio system.
- **SOURCE** or **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to advance through available media modes.
- **SOUND:** Press to access the Sound menu where you can adjust sound and other audio settings.
- **1-6:** Press and hold to store or press to select an AM, FM or SIRIUS memory preset. See **Climate Control** (page 116).
- **DISP:** Switch the display on or off. You can also touch the screen to switch the display back on.
- **Temperature, fan and climate control buttons:** Control the temperature, fan speed or settings of the climate control system. See **Climate Control** (page 116).

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

WARNINGS

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, by visiting:

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

For important information about airbag deployment and the fuel pump shut-off please see the Supplementary Restrains and Roadside Emergencies sections of your owner manual.

To switch 911 Assist on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 410).

To make sure that 911 Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 3 mph (5 km/h). Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest reviews and ratings, SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link sports scores, movie times or ski conditions.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Creating a SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca

Website
www.syncmaroute.ca

Updating Your System

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
www.owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca

Website
www.syncmaroute.ca

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports on the media hub and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

Please reference the website for any further actions.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 410). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 422).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time. Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you are not able to answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-8:00pm EST.

United States: 1-800-392-3673.

Canada: 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. See **Settings** (page 410). System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada and The Lincoln Motor Company do not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada and The Lincoln Motor Company.

HOME SCREEN

E209015

Item	Tile	Home screen display
A	Audio	Shows the active media source. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the compass.
B	Passenger Heated and Climate Controlled Seats *	Displays the current setting of the passenger heated or climate controlled seats. This icon does not display if your vehicle has hard button controls for heated and climate controlled seats. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, this option displays under the audio information.
C	Phone	The name of the connected phone appears on the screen. The status of the phone features also appear. This includes signal strength, battery charge, 911 assist setting state (On or Off), text messaging and roaming.

Item	Tile	Home screen display
D	Driver Heated and Climate Controlled Seats *	Displays the current setting of the heated or climate controlled driver seat. This icon does not display if your vehicle has hard button controls for heated and climate controlled seats. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, this option displays under the audio information.
E	Navigation *	This map displays your current location or current route in real time. When you have navigation active, you also see the next turn and the length of time and distance to your destination. If your vehicle does not have navigation, this space contains the audio information.

* If equipped.

You can touch any of the feature displays to access that feature.

Anytime you select the home button, the system returns you to this screen.

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.

To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands

Voice Command	Action and Description
	Navigation List of Commands
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ [1]	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also turn to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
FM ___ HD ___ [1]	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as “88.7 FM HD 1”.
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".

Voice command	Description
Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

[1] This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

Climate Voice Commands

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice command	Description
Climate Set Temperature ___	Adjust the temperature between 60–85ºF (15.5–29.5ºC).
Climate Help	

Phone Voice Commands

Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See **Settings** (page 410).

Making Calls

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as “Dial 867-5309”.

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Displays the active route.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find New Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:

Voice command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

ENTERTAINMENT

E205443

Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Direct Tune
C	Presets

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu item	
AM	
FM	
SIRIUS [1]	
CD [1]	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

[1] This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.

AM/FM Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*

E234451

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

The following buttons are available for Sirius:

Menu item	Action and description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	

Menu item	Action and description	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts. See **Settings** (page 410).	

Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

There are three preset banks available for SIRIUS. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. See **Settings** (page 410).

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Troubleshooting tips		
Message	**Cause**	**Action**
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

HD Radio™ Information (If Available)

Note: *This feature may not be available in all markets.*

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 410).

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

Website
www.hdradio.com

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:

E142616

The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

Note: *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form.[1]
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form.[1]

[1] You can find the form here:

Website
http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

CD (If equipped)

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat.

Button	Function
	For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

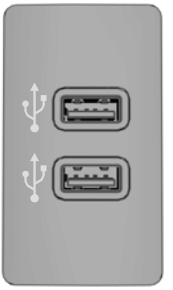
For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All

Button	Function
	Playlists
	Artists
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Ports



E211463

The USB ports are in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or bluetooth-enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 407).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

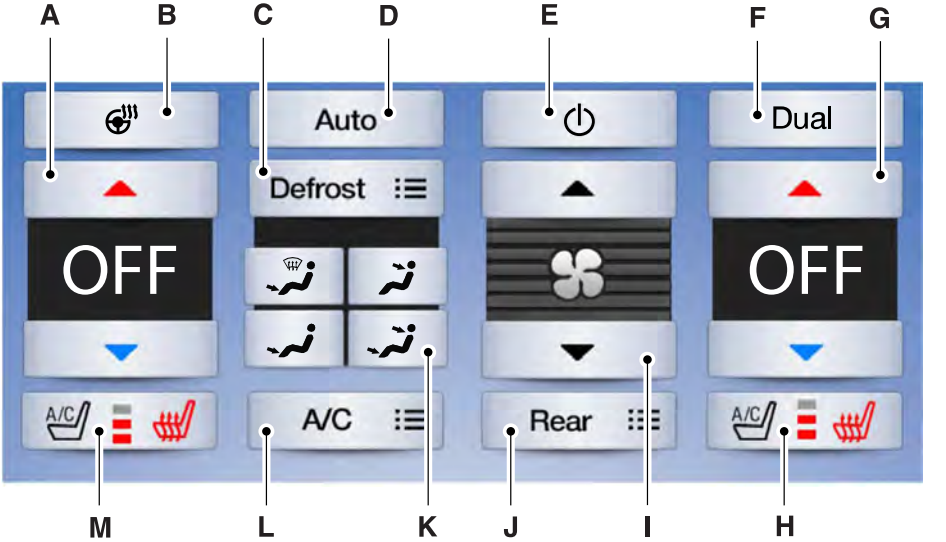
If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

CLIMATE

Touch the climate button on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from one of the screens shown below. Your screen may not contain all of the features shown.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 410).*



E208805

A **Driver temperature:** Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.

B **Heated steering wheel:** Touch the heated steering wheel icon to switch the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).

C **Defrost:** A pop up appears on the screen to display the defrost options.

MAX Defrost: Touch the button to maximize defrosting. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed and the temperature dial returns to the full heat position. You can use this setting to defog or clear a thin covering of ice from the windshield. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select MAX Defrost.

Defrost: Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when Defrost is on.

Heated rear window: Turns the heated rear window on and off. See the Heated Windows and Mirrors chapter in your owner manual.

D **AUTO:** Touch the button to switch on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature.

E **Power:** Touch the button to switch the system on and off. Switching off the climate control system prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

F **DUAL:** This button lights up when the passenger controls are active. To switch the dual zone operation off and link the passenger temperature to the driver temperature, touch the DUAL button to switch it off.

G **Passenger temperature:** Touch up or down to adjust the temperature.

H **Passenger heated and climate controlled seats:**

Touch the heated seat icon to adjust the heated seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to adjust the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).

I **Fan speed:** Touch up or down to increase or decrease the volume of air circulated in your vehicle.

J **Rear:** A pop up appears on the screen to display the rear control options.

Touch the power icon to switch the rear climate control functions off and on.

Touch **Rear Control** to allow the rear seat passengers to adjust the rear climate settings. Touch it again to prevent the rear seat passengers from adjusting the settings. **Rear Control** automatically turns off when you use the touchscreen to adjust the rear climate settings.

If your vehicle has automatic climate controls, select **Auto** to connect the rear climate settings to the Auto settings of the driver.

Touch the up and down arrows to adjust the temperature.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

K **Manual airflow distribution controls:** Select these controls individually or together to direct the air flow to the desired area.

Panel: Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

Floor: Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents.

L **A/C:** A pop-up appears on the screen to display the air conditioning options.

MAX A/C: Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.

A/C: Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.

Recirculated air: Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when you select MAX A/C. You can engage this manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C to reduce fog potential.

M **Driver heated and climate controlled seats:**

Touch the heated seat icon to adjust the heated seat off and on (if equipped).

Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to adjust the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).

PHONE

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

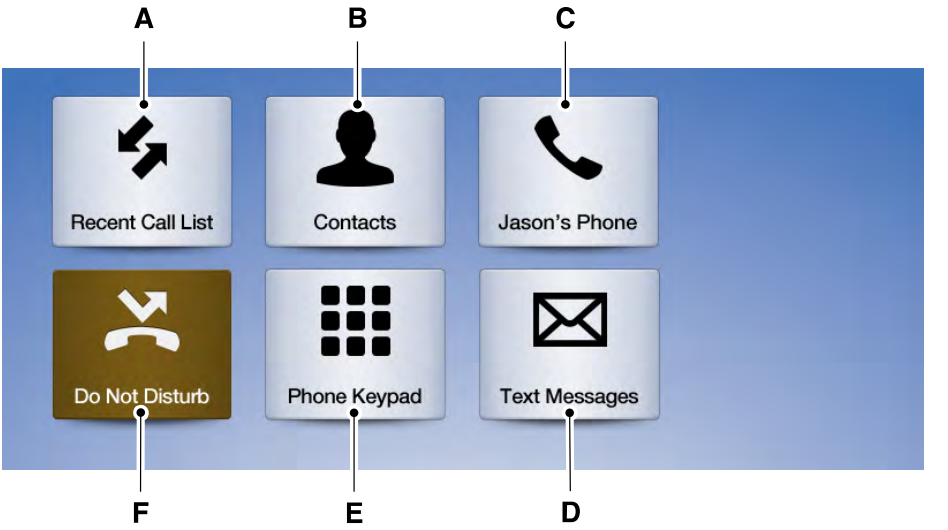
Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Websites
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.



E205447

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts. See **Settings** (page 410).			

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description	
D	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.	
E	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.	
		Call	Press this button to begin a call.
F	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to send all calls directly to your voicemail. New text message notifications are not displayed on the screen and all ringtones and alerts are set to silent.	

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 374). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.
- 911 Assist (United States and Canada only). See **Settings** (page 410).

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 320).

2. Select Apple CarPlay on the touchscreen.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: *Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.*

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: *The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.*

2. To switch this feature on from the Settings screen, scroll left on the screen and select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Enable Android Auto

Note: *Android Auto must be switched on prior to plugging your device.*

You can then plug your device into a USB port. See **USB Port** (page 320).

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: *You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.*

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: *Contact Google for Android Auto support.*

NAVIGATION (If Equipped)

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

Map Mode

Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of 2D city maps, 3D landmarks and 3D city models (when available). 2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use, landscape features, and detailed railroad infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourism value.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

3D city models are complete 3D models of entire city areas including navigable roads, parks, rivers and rendered buildings. 3D landmarks and city models appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage of these varies and improves with updated map releases.

Select the zoom in icon to see a closer view of the map.

Select the zoom out icon to see a farther away view of the map.

You can adjust the view in preset increments. You can also pinch to zoom in or out of the map.

The information bar tells you the names of streets, cities or landmarks as you hover over them with the crosshair curser.

You can change your view of the map by tapping on the location indicator icon on the right hand side of the screen. You can choose from the following options:

Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mi (5 km).

North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.

3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. Adjust this viewing angle and rotate the map 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Points of Interest (POI) grouping icon: You can choose up to three POI icons to display on the map. If the chosen POIs are located close together or are at the same location a box is used to display a single category icon instead of repeating the same icon, in order to reduce clutter. When you select the box on the map, a pop-up appears indicating how many POIs are in this location. Select the pop up to see a list of the available POIs. You can scroll through and select POIs from this list.

If your vehicle is low on charge or fuel, station icons automatically display on the map.

If you have subscribed to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (where available), traffic flow will be indicated on the map by green (clear), yellow (slowing), and red (stopped) road highlights. Traffic flow is indicated where the information is available and varies across the US.

You can choose to display traffic icons on the map representing twelve different types of incidents. See **Settings** (page 410).

You can set a destination by hovering above a location and selecting:

Button
Start

Destination Mode

To set a destination, press:

Menu Item	Description
Destination	
Enter a navigation destination in any of the following formats:	
Search	Street Address (number, street, city, state) For example "12 Mainstreet Dearborn MI"
	Partial Address (number, street) if searching in current state (number, street and zip code (or postal code in Canada)) if searching out of state You can enter unique addresses that contain door number prefixes with or without the prefix. For example, you could enter "6N340 Fairway Lane" or "340 Fairway Lane".
	City (name or zip code)
	Point of Interest (name or category)
	Intersection (street 1 / street 2) (street 1 and street 2) (street 1 & street 2) (street 1 @ street 2) (street 1 at street 2)
	Latitude and Longitude (##.###### , ##.######) This is in a decimal degrees format, one to six decimal places are accepted.
	You are given autocomplete options below the address bar to select as you type. If you do not give an exact destination, a menu displays with your possible selections.
Previous Destinations	Collections of your last 40 navigation destinations display here. You can select any option from the list to select it as your destination.

Menu Item	Description	
	Delete All	Select this option to remove all previous destinations.
Home	Select to navigate to your set Home destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Home displays. To set your Home, press:	
	Home	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for home. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Work	Select to navigate to your set Work destination. The time it takes to travel from your current location to Work displays. To set your Work:	
	Work	A prompt appears asking if you would like to create a favorite for work. Select:
	Yes	Enter a location into the search bar and press:
	Save	
Favorites	Favorites include any location you have previously saved. To add Favorites:	
	Add a Favorite	Select this button and enter a location into the destination bar.
	Search	Select this option to have the system locate the address you have entered.
	Save	Select this button when the address you have entered appears on the screen.
	The address saves as a favorite and you see the favorites screen. You can now select this address from the favorites screen.	
Point of Interest (POI) Categories	POI categories that may display (based on market and vehicle configuration):	
	Food	
	Fuel	
	Hotel	
	ATM	

Menu Item	Description	
	See All	Press to view additional categories. Once you have selected a category, follow the menus to find what you are looking for.
	Inside of these categories you can search by:	
	Nearby	
	Along Route	
	Near Destination	
	In a City	

Once you have chosen your destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Save	This saves the destination to your favorites.	
Start	This shows you a map of your entire route. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Economical Route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
	The time and distance for each route also displays.	
Cancel	On the route screen, you can choose to cancel the current navigation. The system asks for confirmation then returns you to the map mode screen.	

Once you have chosen you destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start	The system uses a variety of screens and prompts to guide you to your destination. During Route guidance, you can press the maneuver arrow icon on the map if you want the system to repeat route guidance instructions. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects that the vehicle is moving.

Menu Item	Action and Description
	The navigation map shows your estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time and the distance to your destination. SYNC 3 may not always announce vehicle arrival at the exact point of your destination and you may have to cancel a route manually.

Navigation Menu

In map mode and during active navigation you can access the navigation menu.

During active navigation, touch the bottom of the screen to view the menu and other buttons.

To access the Navigation menu, press:

Button		
Menu		
You can then select:		
Screen View	Full Map	A full screen map displays during navigation.
	Highway Exit Info	Highway exit information displays on the right hand side of the screen during navigation. Points of interest icons display for restaurants, hotels, fuel stations and ATMs when they are present at the exit. You can select the POI icons to receive a listing of specific locations. You can select the POI location as a waypoint or destination if desired.
	Turn List	Only available during an active route. Displays all of the turns on the current route. You can choose to avoid any road on the turn list by selecting the road from the list. A screen then appears and you can press:
		Avoid
		The system calculates a new route and displays a new turn list.
Traffic List	You can find the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information by pressing this button. This information requires an active subscription to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link. When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays (if any are present). When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.	

Button		
Navigation Settings	Press this button to adjust your preferences. See **Settings** (page 410).	
Where Am I?	Provides your current location city and the nearest road.	
The following are only available on the menu during an active navigation route:		
Cancel Route	The system asks for confirmation and then returns you to the map mode screen.	
Mute Guidance	Selecting this option switches off the audio navigation guidance. Press the button again to un-mute guidance.	
View Route	Press this to see a map of the full route.	
Detour	An alternate route displays in comparison with the current route.	
Edit Waypoints	Only available if you have an active waypoint on your route. See **Waypoints** later in this section for information on how to set waypoints.	
	Use this button to re-order or remove your waypoints.	
	You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
	To return to your route press:	Go

Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route.

To add a waypoint:

1. Select the search icon (magnifying glass) while on an active route. This brings up the destination menu.
2. Set your destination using any of the given methods. Once the destination has been selected, the screen allows you to set the destination as a waypoint by selecting:

Menu Item	
Add Waypoint	The waypoint list then appears and you are able to re-order all of your waypoints by selecting the menu icon on the right hand side of the location. You can select up to five waypoints.
You can also have the system set the order for you by pressing:	Optimize Order
To return to your route, press:	Go

cityseeker (If Equipped)

Note: *cityseeker point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 1,110 cities (1,049 in the United States, 36 in Canada and 15 in Mexico).*

E225487

cityseeker, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address, phone number and a star rating.

Press **More Information** to see a photo, a review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price and the web address. This screen displays the point of interest icons.

For restaurants, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address. Hotel service icons include:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-Fi

Attractions include nearby landmarks, amusement parks, historic buildings and more. cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, reviews, hour of operation and admission price.

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link is available on vehicles equipped with navigation and only in select markets. You must activate and subscribe to receive SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information. It helps you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see current sports scores. See **Apps** (page 407).

The system calculates a reasonable efficient route based on available speed limits, traffic, and road conditions. You may know a local short cut that is more efficient at a given time than the route provided by SYNC 3, but you should expect a slight difference in minutes or miles with the SYNC 3 route.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership, by calling 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada or 01-800-557-5539 in Mexico. You can also visit:

Website
www.navigation.com/sync

You need to specify the make and model of your vehicle to determine if there is an update available.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com/mapcreator. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Map coverage includes the USA (including Puerto Rico and the US Virgin Islands), Canada and Mexico.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.*

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit:*

Websites
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *We encourage you to review the smartphone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data.*

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Note: *AppLink is a native SYNC system feature. Accessing mobile apps through AppLink is only possible when Android Auto or Apple CarPlay are disabled. Some apps may only be accessible in the car through Applink and others only through Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. Please refer to the Smartphone Connectivity information to disable Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.*

Note: *In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the App needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.*

Note: *If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Menu Item	Action and Description
Connect Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, odometer, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain this data for only as long as necessary to provide this service, troubleshoot, and improve products and services and to offer you products and services that may interest you where allowed by law.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Ford reserves the right to limit functionality or deactivate mobile apps at any time.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 410).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: *You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.*

Note: *If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.*

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.*

Note: *In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.*

Note: *A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to www.siriusxm.com/travellink for more information.*

Note: *Visit www.siriusxm.com/traffic and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.*

Note: *Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.*

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.	
Traffic Nearby		
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Pressing this button allows you to adjust the following:

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns Treble, Midrange, and Bass sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some Apple devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.	
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.	
Gracenote® Management	Switches on and off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.		
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.		
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.		
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.		

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

You can adjust the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	Turning Bluetooth off disconnects all devices and does not permit new connections.

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone’s manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone’s compatibility, see your phone’s manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website:

Website
owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Device Information	Allows you to see phone and device information.
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Manage Contacts	
You can then select:	
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	First Name	Last Name
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
You can then select:	
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

911 Assist

Note: *This service is only available in the United States and Canada.*

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phonebook as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the 911 Assist call process.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
FM HD Radio AM HD Radio (Dependent on current radio source, If Available)	Activation of this feature allows you to listen to HD radio broadcasts.
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.

Navigation

You can adjust many of the Navigation preferences by selecting the following menus.

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs
Incident Map Icons	This menu allows you to choose which incident icons you would like to have displayed on the navigation map.	

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Use HOV Lanes	The system selects High Occupancy Vehicle or car pool lanes when providing route guidance.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Dynamic Route Guidance	Enable or disable considering traffic information when planning a route. The system can find a faster route based on heavy traffic flow information or detect a Road Closed incident and find a detour route if possible.		
Avoid Freeways	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids freeways when computing a navigation route.		
Avoid Toll Roads	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids Toll Roads when computing a navigation route.		
Avoid Ferries/Car Trains	If selected, SYNC 3 avoids the use of Ferries or Trains when computing a navigation route.		

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.
Then select any of the following:	
Voice and Tones	A tone sounds followed by voice instructions.
Voice Only	Only voice instructions are given.
Tones Only	Only a tone sounds to prompt you.

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device on SYNC 3. In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected devices sends data to Ford in the United States. The encrypted information includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *All Mobile Apps may not be compatible with the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mobile Apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on SYNC 3.
	You can view the status of mobile app permissions in the settings menu.
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:	
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.
	There are three possible statuses:

Menu Item	Action and Description		
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...
	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Request Update		Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually. For example, when your mobile device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, select:
			Request Update
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.		
There may also be SYNC 3 enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.		

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in English, Spanish or French.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Screen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.

Menu Item	
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi

You can adjust the following:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for SYNC 3 vehicle software updates.
View Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Tap a color once to active ambient lighting. This sets the color to the highest intensity.

You can drag the colors up and down to increase or decrease the intensity.

To switch ambient lighting off, press the active color once or drag the active color all the way down to zero intensity.

Vehicle

Note: *You vehicle may not have all of these features.*

You can select the following features to update their settings.

Door Keypad Code

Select this button to add or erase a personal door keypad code. To add or erase a personal code, you first need to enter the five-digit factory set code. You can find this code on the owner's wallet card in the glove box or from your authorized dealer.

Camera Settings

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider.

You can find more information on the rear-view camera system in the parking aids chapter of your owner manual.

Onboard Modem Serial Number (ESN)

Selecting this button on the settings menu shows you the ESN number for your system. You need this number for certain registrations such as Satellite Radio.

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
	Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings by selecting the following options.

Menu Item	
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system is locked and you cannot remember the PIN, please contact the Customer Relationship Center.*

United States: 1-800-392-3673
Canada: 1-800-565-3673

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the Ford website.

Website
owner.ford.com

Website
www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC 3 phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the messaging application.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format. See **Entertainment** (page 381).
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See **Settings** (page 410).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Connect Mobile Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an Applink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Connect Mobile Apps" on SYNC 3.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
	The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phonebook.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.
		SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>|) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting please call or visit the Ford Website.

Ford Support	
Customer Relationship Center	United States: 1-800-392-3673
	Canada: 1-800-565-3673
Website	owner.ford.com www.syncmyride.ca www.syncmaroute.ca

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

Web Address (United States)
www.Accessories.Ford.com

Web Address (Canada)
www.Accessories.Ford.ca

Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through an authorized Ford dealer. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your Ford Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior Style

- Hood deflectors.
- Graphics.
- Side-window deflectors.
- Splash guards.
- Spoiler.

Interior Style

- Ambient lighting.
- Door sill plates with logo.
- Floor mats.
- Illuminated door sill plate.
- Rear seat entertainment*.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup or coin holder.
- Camping tent*.
- Cargo area protector.
- Cargo net.
- Cargo organization and management.
- Conversation mirror.
- Roof racks and carriers*.
- Roof rails.
- Seat covers*.
- Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories.

Peace of Mind

- Full vehicle covers*.
- Locking fuel plug.
- Remote start.
- Roadside assistance kits*.
- Vehicle security systems.
- Wheel locks.

*Ford Licensed Accessories. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD PROTECT EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only)

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan means peace of mind. It's the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, Insist on Ford Protect Extended Service Plans!

Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect Extended Service Plan. With Ford Protect you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Ford Protect Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it's probably easier to list what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we'll give you a loaner to use for the day.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect Extended Service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Which should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.
- Cabin air filter replacement every 20,000 mi (32,000 km) (electric vehicles only).

Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Protect Extended Service Plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect Extended Service Plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan
P.O. Box 321067
Detroit, MI 48232

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect Extended Service Plan. Ford Protect Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Protect Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Protect Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information; visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Protect Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 299).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 249).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Check every month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

Check every six months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Multi-Point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure**
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

**If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED message	
Interval	**Vehicle use and example**
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	**Normal**
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	**Severe**
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 miles (4800-7999 km)	**Extreme**
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Normal Maintenance Intervals

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*
Change engine oil and filter.**
Rotate the tires.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints (AWD only).
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints.

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display*
Inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

* Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

** Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 249).

Other maintenance items [1]	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant. [2]
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s). [3]
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s). [4]

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

[2] Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

[3] After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

[4] If not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 kilometers).

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Towing a trailer or using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect rear axle and U-joints (AWD only).
	Inspect half-shaft boots.
	See axle maintenance items under **Exceptions**.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Extended Hot and Cold climate operation	
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Change engine oil and filter.*

*Hot Climates only

Operating in off-road (unpaved, sandy, dusty) and Mountainous conditions	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Oil Change Indicator Reset** (page 249).

Exclusive use of E85 (flex fuel vehicles only)	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

Axle and PTU maintenance: The Power Transfer Unit (PTU) and rear axle (AWD only) in your vehicle does not require any normal scheduled maintenance. Taurus SHO vehicles are electronically monitored and notify the driver required by service by displaying a message in the information display. The PTU lubricant will be more likely to require a fluid change if the vehicle has extended periods of extreme or severe duty cycle driving. Changing or checking the PTU lubricant is not necessary unless the unit has been submerged in water, shows sign of leakage or (Taurus SHO only) a message indicating required service is displayed. Contact your authorized dealer for service.

California fuel filter replacement: If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Hot climate oil change intervals: Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 5000 miles (8000 kilometers).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 3,000 mi (4,800 km).

Engine air filter and cabin air filter replacement: The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended): ☐

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav’s third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav (“Telenav”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessung-swesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”
Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....116
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....175
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....175
Accessories....435
Exterior Style....435
Interior Style....435
Lifestyle....435
Peace of Mind....435
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
ACC
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control....189
Active Park Assist....181
Automatic Steering into Parking Space....183
Deactivating the Park Assist Feature....183
Troubleshooting the System....184
Using Active Park Assist....182
Adaptive Headlamps....85
Adjusting the Headlamps....259
Horizontal Aim Adjustment....260
Vertical Aim....259
Adjusting the Pedals....78
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column....75
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column....75
Easy Entry and Exit Feature....76
End of Travel Position....76
Memory Feature....76
AFS
See: Adaptive Headlamps....85
Airbag Disposal....51
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....116
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter....265
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....74
All-Wheel Drive....168
Ambient Lighting....87
Anti-Theft Alarm....74
Arming the Alarm....74
Disarming the Alarm....74
Appendices....457
Apps....407
....407
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link....409
At a Glance....16
Audible Warnings and Indicators....97
Headlamps On Warning Chime....98
Key in Ignition Warning Chime....97
Keyless Warning Alert....98
Parking Brake On Warning Chime....98
Audio Control....76
MEDIA....76
Seek, Next or Previous....76
Audio System....313
General Information....313
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC/Satellite Radio....314
Menu Structure....316
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....318
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD....319
Autolamps....83
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....83
Automatic Climate Control....117
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Premium AM/FM/CD....119
Automatic Transmission....164
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....167
Brake-Shift Interlock....166
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....167
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....164
Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission....164
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....254
Adding Transmission Fluid 255

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing

Checking the Transmission Fluid Level....254
Autowipers....79
Auxiliary Power Points....145
110 Volt AC Power Point....145
12 Volt DC Power Point....145
Locations....145
AWD
See: All-Wheel Drive....168

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....256
Blind Spot Information System....195
Switching the System Off and On....196
System Errors....196
System Limitations....196
Using the System....195
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....244
Booster Seats....28
Types of Booster Seats....29
Brake Fluid Check....255
Brakes....175
General Information....175
Breaking-In....217
Bulb Specification Chart....263

C

Cabin Air Filter....124
California Proposition 65....11
Capacities and Specifications - 3.5L Duratec....304
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates....307
Specifications....304
Capacities and Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™....308
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates....312
Specifications....309
Capacities and Specifications....299
Cargo Nets....203
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior....266
Center Console....147
Console Refrigerator and Freezer....147
Second Row Center Console....147
Changing a Bulb....260
Brake and Rear Lamps, Rear Direction Indicator and Reversing Lamp....262
Front Direction Indicator and Front Parking Lamp....261
Front Fog Lamp....262
Headlamp....261
Headlamp Low Beam and Headlamp High Beam....261
LED Lamps....263
License Plate Lamp....263
Changing a Fuse....242
Fuses....242
Changing a Road Wheel....293
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information....293
Tire Change Procedure....294
Changing the 12V Battery....256
Changing the Engine Air Filter....265
Changing the Wiper Blades....258
Front Wiper Blades....258
Rear Window Wiper Blade....259
Checking MyKey System Status....60
Checking the Wiper Blades....258
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....41
Child Restraint Positioning....30
Child Safety....18
General Information....18
Child Safety Locks....32
Left-Hand Side....33
Right-Hand Side....33
Cleaning Leather Seats....270
Cleaning Products....266
Materials....266
Cleaning the Engine....268
Cleaning the Exterior....266
Exterior Chrome Parts....267
Exterior Plastic Parts....267
Stripes or Graphics....267
Underbody....267
Under Hood....267
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....269
Cleaning the Interior....269

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Cleaning the Wheels.....270
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....268
Clearing All MyKeys.....59
Climate.....391
Climate Control.....116
Climate Controlled Seats.....139
Cooled Seats.....139
Heated Seats.....139
Collision Warning System.....200
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....200
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check.....250
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....50
Creating a MyKey.....58
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings.....58
Cross Traffic Alert.....197
False Alerts.....199
Switching the System Off and On.....199
System Errors.....199
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....198
System Limitations.....199
Using the System.....197
Cruise Control.....77
Principle of Operation.....188
Type 1.....77
Type 2.....77
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control.....188
Customer Assistance.....226

D

Data Recording.....9
Event Data Recording.....10
Service Data Recording.....9
Daytime Running Lamps.....85
Direction Indicators.....86
Lane Change.....86
Doors and Locks.....63
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....45
Children and Airbags.....45
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....45
Driving Aids.....195
Driving Hints.....217
Driving Through Water.....218
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....85

E

Economical Driving.....217
Emission Control System.....161
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....162
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....162
End User License Agreement.....457
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) 457
Engine Block Heater.....153
Using the Engine Block Heater.....154
Engine Coolant Check.....250
Adding Coolant.....250
Coolant Change.....252
Engine Coolant Temperature Management.....253
Fail-Safe Cooling.....252
Recycled Coolant.....251
Severe Climates.....251
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....73
Engine Oil Check.....248
Adding Engine Oil.....248
Engine Oil Dipstick.....248
Engine Specifications - 3.5L Duratec.....299
Drivebelt Routing.....299
Engine Specifications - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....299
Drivebelt Routing.....300
Entertainment.....381
AM/FM Radio.....382
Apps.....390
Bluetooth Stereo or USB.....389
CD (If equipped).....388
HD Radio™ Information (If Available).....385
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio (If Activated).....383
Sources.....381
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....390
USB Ports.....390

Environment.....15
Essential Towing Checks.....212
Before Towing a Trailer.....214
Hitches.....213
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC).....215
Safety Chains.....213
Trailer Brake Controller Connector.....213
Trailer Brakes.....213
Trailer Lamps.....214
Trailer Towing Connector (Vehicles with a Trailer Towing Package and 7–Pin Connector).....212
When Towing a Trailer.....214
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording.....9
Export Unique Options.....13
Exterior Mirrors.....89
Blind Spot Information System.....90
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....89
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....90
Integrated Blind Spot Mirror.....90
Memory Mirrors.....90
Power Exterior Mirrors.....89
Power-Folding Mirrors.....89
Puddle Lamps.....90

F

Fastening the Seatbelts.....35
Rear Inflatable Seatbelt.....37
Seatbelt Locking Modes.....36
Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....35
Floor Mats.....218
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps.....85
Foot Pedals
See: Adjusting the Pedals.....78
Ford Credit.....11
US Only.....11
Ford Protect.....437
Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (CANADA ONLY).....438
Ford Protect Extended Service Plans (U.S. Only).....437
Front Fog Lamps.....85
Front Passenger Sensing System.....46
Fuel and Refueling.....155
Fuel Consumption.....160
Calculating Fuel Economy.....160
Filling the Fuel Tank.....160
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....156
Fuel Quality.....156
Choosing the Right Fuel.....156
Fuel Shutoff.....221
Fuses.....233
Fuse Specification Chart.....233
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....238
Power Distribution Box.....233

G

Garage Door Opener
See: Universal Garage Door Opener.....140
Gauges.....93
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....52
Intelligent Access.....52
General Maintenance Information.....439
Multi-Point Inspection.....441
Owner Checks and Services.....440
Protecting Your Investment.....439
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?.....439
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?.....439
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada.....229
Getting the Services You Need.....226
Away From Home.....226

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake.....176
Hazard Warning Flashers.....221
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....259
Headlamp Exit Delay.....84
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp.....260
Head Restraints.....125
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....126
Tilting Head Restraints.....127
Heated Seats.....138
Front Seats.....138

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Second Row Heated Seats.....138
Heated Steering Wheel.....77
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....123
Heated Exterior Mirror.....124
Heated Rear Window.....123
Heating
See: Climate Control.....116
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....120
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....121
General Hints.....120
Heating the Interior Quickly.....121
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....122
Recommended Settings for Heating.....121
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....122
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....175
Home Screen.....373
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....244

I

Ignition Switch.....149
In California (U.S. Only).....227
Information Display Control.....77
Information Displays.....99
General Information.....99
Information Messages.....107
Adaptive Cruise Control.....108
AdvanceTrac™.....108
Alarm.....108
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....109
AWD.....109
Battery and Charging System.....110
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System.....110
Brake System.....111
Collision Warning System.....111
Doors and Locks.....111
Fuel.....112
Keys and Intelligent Access.....112
Maintenance.....112
MyKey.....113
Park Aid.....114
Power Steering.....114
Seats.....114
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....115
Towing.....115
Traction Control.....115
Transmission.....115
Installing Child Restraints.....19
Child Seats.....19
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts.....20
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH).....25
Using Tether Straps.....26
Instrument Cluster.....93
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....84
Instrument Panel Overview.....16
Interior Lamps.....86
Front Row Map Lamps.....86
Second Row Map Lamps.....87
Interior Mirror.....91
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....91
Introduction.....7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....222
Connecting the Jumper Cables.....222
Jump Starting.....223
Preparing Your Vehicle.....222
Removing the Jumper Cables.....223

K

Keyless Entry.....70
SECURICODE™ Keyless Entry Keypad.....70
Keyless Starting.....149
Ignition Modes.....150
Keys and Remote Controls.....52

L

Lighting Control.....82
Headlamp Flasher.....83
High Beams.....82
Lighting.....82
General Information.....82
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....203
Load Carrying.....203

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Load Limit.....203
Special Loading Instructions for Owners of Pick-up Trucks and Utility-type Vehicles.....208
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer.....203
Locking and Unlocking.....63
Activating Intelligent Access.....64
Autolock.....65
Autounlock.....65
Battery Saver.....66
Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock.....65
Illuminated Entry.....66
Illuminated Exit.....66
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade.....63
Opening a Rear Door From the Inside.....64
Power Door Locks.....63
Remote Control.....63
Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.....64
Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys.....64
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....293

M

Maintenance.....244
General Information.....244
Manual Climate Control.....116
Manual Liftgate.....66
Closing the Liftgate.....67
Opening the Liftgate.....67
Manual Seats.....128
Lumbar Adjustment.....129
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....128
Recline Adjustment.....128
Media Hub.....320
Memory Function.....130
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....131
Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key Fob.....131
Saving a PreSet Position.....130
Message Center
See: Information Displays.....99
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....123
See: Windows and Mirrors.....88
Mobile Communications Equipment.....13
Moonroof.....91
Bounce-Back.....92
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....92
Venting the Moonroof.....92
Motorcraft Parts - 3.5L Duratec.....300
Motorcraft Parts - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....301
MyKey Troubleshooting.....61
MyKey™.....57
Principle of Operation.....57

N

Navigation.....399
cityseeker.....406
Destination Mode.....401
Map Mode.....399
Navigation Map Updates.....407
Navigation Menu.....404
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.....407
Waypoints.....405
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....442
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™.....442
Normal Maintenance Intervals.....443

O

Oil Change Indicator Reset.....249
Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check.....248
Opening and Closing the Hood.....244
Closing the Hood.....245
Opening the Hood.....244
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature.....230
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual.....231
Overhead Console.....148

P

Parking Aids.....180
Principle of Operation.....180

Parking Brake.....176
Passive Anti-Theft System.....73
SecuriLock®.....73
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....73
Pedals.....78
Perchlorate.....11
Personal Safety System™.....43
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?.....43
Phone.....393
During a Phone Call.....397
Making Calls.....396
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....393
Phone Menu.....394
Receiving Calls.....397
Smartphone Connectivity.....398
Text Messaging.....398
Post-Crash Alert System.....224
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking.....63
Power Liftgate.....67
Hands-Free Feature.....70
Obstacle Detection.....69
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....68
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....69
Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....69
Power Seats.....129
Power Lumbar.....130
Power Steering Fluid Check.....256
Power Windows.....88
Accessory Delay.....88
Bounce-Back.....88
One-Touch Down.....88
One-Touch Up.....88
Window Lock.....88
Protecting the Environment.....15

R

Rear Parking Aid.....180
Rear Passenger Climate Controls.....123
Rear Seats.....131
Adjusting the Rear Seats.....131
Rear View Camera.....185
Using the Rear View Camera System.....185
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera.....185
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....80
Rear Camera Washer.....81
Rear Window Washer.....81
Rear Window Wiper.....80
Recommended Towing Weights.....210
Refueling.....157
System Warnings.....159
Remote Control.....53
Car Finder.....55
Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.....53
Intelligent Access Key.....53
Memory Feature.....56
Remote Start.....55
Replacing the Battery.....54
Sounding the Panic Alarm.....55
Remote Start.....124
Automatic Settings.....124
Removing a Headlamp.....260
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....270
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....12
Collision Repairs.....12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....12
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....56
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only).....231
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only).....231
Roadside Assistance.....220
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance.....220
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage.....221
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance.....221
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance.....220
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance.....220
Roadside Emergencies.....220
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....203
Running-In
See: Breaking-In.....217

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Running Out of Fuel.....156
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....157
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....157

S

Safety Canopy™.....49
Safety Precautions.....155
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....447
Scheduled Maintenance.....439
Seatbelt Extension.....41
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....38
Seatbelt Reminder.....39
Belt-Minder™.....39
Seatbelts.....34
Principle of Operation.....34
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime.....39
Conditions of operation.....39
Seats.....125
Security.....73
Settings.....410
911 Assist.....415
Ambient Lighting.....420
Bluetooth.....412
Clock.....411
Display.....421
General.....419
Media Player.....411
Mobile Apps.....418
Navigation.....416
Phone.....412
Radio.....415
Sound.....410
Valet Mode.....422
Vehicle.....420
Voice Control.....422
Wi-Fi.....420
Side Airbags.....48
Sitting in the Correct Position.....125
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains.....289
Special Notices.....12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty.....12
On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector.....13
Special Instructions.....12
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....445
Exceptions.....446
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control.....188
Stability Control.....178
Principle of Operation.....178
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch.....149
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....150
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....152
Failure to Start.....152
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....153
Important Ventilating Information.....153
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....153
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....152
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....150
Vehicles with Keyless Start.....151
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....149
General Information.....149
Steering.....200
Electric Power Steering.....200
Steering Wheel.....75
Storage Compartments.....147
Sunroof
See: Moonroof.....91
Sun Visors.....91
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....91
Supplementary Restraints System.....44
Principle of Operation.....44
Symbols Glossary.....7
SYNC™ 3.....360
General Information.....360
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....422
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....339
911 Assist.....339
SYNC™ AppLink™.....341
SYNC Mobile Apps.....341
SYNC™.....321
General Information.....321
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....352

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate.....66
See: Power Liftgate.....67
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....299
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only).....228
Tire Care.....275
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....277
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading.....275
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall.....278
Temperature A B C.....276
Traction AA A B C.....276
Treadwear.....276
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....290
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....291
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System 291
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....273
Towing a Trailer.....209
Load Placement.....209
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....215
Emergency Towing.....215
Recreational Towing.....215
Towing.....209
Traction Control.....177
Principle of Operation.....177
Trailer Sway Control.....210
Transmission Code Designation.....303
Transmission.....164
Transmission
See: Transmission.....164
Transporting the Vehicle.....224

U

Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Duratec.....246
Under Hood Overview - 3.5L Ecoboost™.....247
Universal Garage Door Opener.....140
HomeLink Wireless Control System.....140
USB Port.....320
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....189
Automatic Cancellation.....192
Blocked Sensor.....193
Canceling the Set Speed.....191
Changing the Set Speed.....192
Detection Issues.....193
Following a Vehicle.....190
Hilly Condition Usage.....192
Overriding the System.....192
Resuming the Set Speed.....192
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed.....190
Setting the Gap Distance.....191
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off.....192
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On.....189
Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....194
System Not Available.....193
Using All-Wheel Drive.....168
Driving In Special Conditions With All-Wheel Drive (AWD).....170
Operating AWD Vehicles With Mismatched Tires.....169
Operating AWD Vehicles With Spare Tires.....169
Using Cruise Control.....188
Switching Cruise Control Off.....189
Switching Cruise Control On.....188
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....61
Using Snow Chains.....289
Using Stability Control.....179
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....342
Accessing Your Play Menu.....347
Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port.....342
Media Menu Features.....345
Media Voice Commands.....344
System Settings.....349
What's Playing?.....344
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....326
Accessing Features Through the Phone Menu.....330
Accessing Your Phone Settings.....334

Flex (), enUSA, First Printing

Making a Call....329
Pairing a Cell Phone for the First Time....326
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....327
Phone Options during an Active Call....329
Phone Voice Commands....327
Receiving Calls....329
System Settings....336
Text Messaging....332
Using Traction Control....177
Switching the System Off....177
System Indicator Lights and Messages....177
Using a Switch....177
Using the Information Display Controls....177
Using Voice Recognition....323
Audio Voice Commands....375
Climate Voice Commands....376
Initiating a Voice Session....323
Mobile App Voice Commands....379
Navigation Voice Commands....378
Phone Voice Commands....376
SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands....379
System Interaction and Feedback....324
Voice Settings Commands....380
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)....229

V

Vehicle Care....266
General Information....266
Vehicle Certification Label....303
Vehicle Identification Number....302
Vehicle Storage....271
Battery....272
Body....271
Brakes....272
Cooling system....272
Engine....271
Fuel system....272
General....271
Miscellaneous....272
Removing Vehicle From Storage....272
Tires....272
Ventilation
See: Climate Control....116
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number....302
Voice Control....77

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators....94
Adaptive Cruise Control....94
Airbag Readiness....95
Anti-Lock Braking System....95
Battery....95
Brake System....95
Charging System....95
Cruise Control....95
Directional Indicator....97
Door Ajar....95
Engine Coolant Temperature....95
Engine Oil....96
Fasten Seatbelt....96
Front Airbag....96
Front Fog Lamps....96
Head Up Display....96
High Beam....96
Liftgate Ajar....96
Low Fuel Level....96
Low Tire Pressure Warning....96
Low Washer Fluid....96
Parking Lamps....96
Powertrain Malfunction/Reduced Power....97
Service Engine Soon....97
Stability Control....97
Stability Control Off....97
Washer Fluid Check....256
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....266
See: Wipers and Washers....79
Waxing....267
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....293
Wheels and Tires....273
General Information....273
Technical Specifications....298
Windows and Mirrors....88
Windshield Washers....80

Windshield Wipers.....79
Speed Dependent Wipers.....79
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....258
Wipers and Washers.....79

Flex ( ), enUSA, First Printing